Samsung GALAXY MEGA™

4 G LTE SMARTPHONE

User Manual

Please read this manual before operating your device and keep it for future reference.

Warning! This product contains chemicals known to the State of California to cause cancer and reproductive toxicity.

Intellectual Property

All Intellectual Property, as defined below, owned by or which is otherwise the property of Samsung or its respective suppliers relating to the SAMSUNG Phone, including but not limited to, accessories, parts, or software relating there to (the "Phone System"), is proprietary to Samsung and protected under federal laws, state laws, and international treaty provisions. Intellectual Property includes, but is not limited to, inventions (patentable or unpatentable), patents, trade secrets, copyrights, software, computer programs, and related documentation and other works of authorship. You may not infringe or otherwise violate the rights secured by the Intellectual Property. Moreover, you agree that you will not (and will not attempt to) modify, prepare derivative works of, reverse engineer, decompile, disassemble, or otherwise attempt to create source code from the software. No title to or ownership in the Intellectual Property is transferred to you. All applicable rights of the Intellectual Property shall remain with SAMSUNG and its suppliers.

Open Source Software

Some software components of this product incorporate source code covered under GNU General Public License (GPL), GNU Lesser General Public License (LGPL), OpenSSL License, BSD License and other open source licenses. To obtain the source code covered under the open source licenses, please visit:

http://opensource.samsung.com.

Disclaimer of Warranties; Exclusion of Liability

EXCEPT AS SET FORTH IN THE EXPRESS WARRANTY CONTAINED ON THE WARRANTY PAGE ENCLOSED WITH THE PRODUCT, THE PURCHASER TAKES THE PRODUCT "AS IS", AND SAMSUNG MAKES NO EXPRESS OR IMPLIED WARRANTY OF ANY KIND WHATSOEVER WITH RESPECT TO THE PRODUCT, INCLUDING BUT NOT LIMITED TO THE MERCHANTABILITY OF THE PRODUCT OR ITS FITNESS FOR ANY PARTICULAR PURPOSE OR USE; THE DESIGN, CONDITION OR QUALITY OF THE PRODUCT; THE PERFORMANCE OF THE PRODUCT; THE WORKMANSHIP OF THE PRODUCT OR THE COMPONENTS CONTAINED THEREIN; OR COMPLIANCE OF THE PRODUCT WITH THE REQUIREMENTS OF ANY LAW, RULE, SPECIFICATION OR CONTRACT PERTAINING THERETO. NOTHING CONTAINED IN THE INSTRUCTION MANUAL SHALL BE CONSTRUED TO CREATE AN EXPRESS OR IMPLIED WARRANTY OF ANY KIND WHATSOEVER WITH RESPECT TO THE PRODUCT. IN ADDITION, SAMSUNG SHALL NOT BE LIABLE FOR ANY DAMAGES OF ANY KIND RESULTING FROM THE PURCHASE OR USE OF THE PRODUCT OR ARISING FROM THE BREACH OF THE EXPRESS WARRANTY, INCLUDING INCIDENTAL, SPECIAL OR CONSEQUENTIAL DAMAGES, OR LOSS OF ANTICIPATED PROFITS OR BENEFITS.

Modification of Software

SAMSUNG IS NOT LIABLE FOR PERFORMANCE ISSUES OR INCOMPATIBILITIES CAUSED BY YOUR EDITING OF REGISTRY SETTINGS, OR YOUR MODIFICATION OF OPERATING SYSTEM SOFTWARE.

USING CUSTOM OPERATING SYSTEM SOFTWARE MAY CAUSE YOUR DEVICE AND APPLICATIONS TO WORK IMPROPERLY. YOUR CARRIER MAY NOT PERMIT USERS TO DOWNLOAD CERTAIN SOFTWARE, SUCH AS CUSTOM OS.

SAFE™ (Samsung Approved For Enterprise)

SAFE™: "SAFE™" (Samsung for Enterprise) is a mark for a Samsung device which has been tested against Samsung's own internal criteria for interoperability with certain third party security-related solutions for MDM and VPN. The testing includes field testing with local network connection and menu tree testing which tests functionality of the solutions in conjunction with the Samsung device. During the testing, the device is tested with the security solutions to see if the solutions work with the device as

described by the third party security solution providers. The testing, for example, includes field testing with local network connection and menu tree testing which tests functionality of the solutions in conjunction with the Samsung device. For more information about Samsung's SAFE™ program, please refer to www.samsung.com/us/safe.

Disclaimer of Warranties: EXCEPT AS OTHERWISE PROVIDED IN THEIR STANDARD END USER LICENSE AND WARRANTY, TO THE FULL EXTENT PERMITTED BY LAW SAMSUNG ELECTRONICS CO., LTD., SAMSUNG TELECOMMUNICATIONS AMERICA, LLC, AND THEIR AFFILIATES (COLLECTIVELY REFERRED TO HEREIN AS THE "SAMSUNG ENTITIES") EXPRESSLY DISCLAIM ANY AND ALL WARRANTIES, EXPRESS OR IMPLIED, INCLUDING ANY WARRANTY OF MERCHANTABILITY, FITNESS FOR A PARTICULAR PURPOSE, INTEROPERABILITY OR NON-INFRINGEMENT, WITH RESPECT TO INFORMATION TECHNOLOGY SECURITY PROTECTION, SAFE™ DEVICES AND APPLICATIONS TESTED WITH SAFE™ DEVICES. IN NO EVENT SHALL THE SAMSUNG ENTITIES BE LIABLE FOR ANY DIRECT, INDIRECT, INCIDENTAL, PUNITIVE, OR CONSEQUENTIAL DAMAGES OF ANY KIND WHATSOEVER WITH RESPECT TO INFORMATION TECHNOLOGY SECURITY PROTECTION, SAFE™ DEVICES OR APPLICATIONS TESTED WITH SAFE™ DEVICES. In addition, information technology security protection will be affected by features or functionality associated with, among other things the e-mail platform, master data management, and virtual private network solutions selected by the software provider, solution provider or user. Choice of an e-mail, master data management, and virtual private network solution is at the sole discretion of the software provider, solution provider or user and any associated effect on information technology security protection is solely the responsibility of the software provider, solution provider or user. For complete statement of limited warranty, please refer to www.samsung.com/us/safe, available on the web and where Samsung smartphone and Galaxy Tab™ devices are sold. [101212]

Samsung Telecommunications America (STA), LLC

Headquarters:
1301 E. Lookout Drive
Richardson, TX 75082

Customer Care Center:
1000 Klein Rd.
Plano, TX 75074
Toll Free Tel: 1.888.987.HELP (4357)

Internet Address:
http://www.samsung.com

©2013 Samsung Telecommunications America, LLC. Samsung is a registered trademark of Samsung Electronics Co., Ltd.

Do you have questions about your Samsung Mobile Device?
For 24 hour information and assistance, we offer a new FAQ/ARS System (Automated Response System) at:
www.samsung.com/us/support

The actual available capacity of the internal memory is less than the specified capacity because the operating system and default applications occupy part of the memory. The available capacity may change when you upgrade the device.

Nuance®, VSuite™, T9® Text Input, and the Nuance logo are trademarks or registered trademarks of Nuance Communications, Inc., or its affiliates in the United States and/or other countries.

ACCESS® and NetFront™ are trademarks or registered trademarks of ACCESS Co., Ltd. in Japan and other countries.

The Bluetooth® word mark, figure mark (stylized “B Design”), and combination mark (Bluetooth word mark and “B Design”) are registered trademarks and are wholly owned by the Bluetooth SIG.

microSD™ and the microSD logo are Trademarks of the SD Card Association.

Openwave® is a registered Trademark of Openwave, Inc.

Google, the Google logo, Android, the Android logo, Google Play, Gmail, Google Mail, Google Maps, Google Music, Google Hangouts, Picasa, YouTube and other marks are trademarks of Google Inc.

Wi-Fi is a registered trademark of the Wireless Fidelity Alliance, Inc.

LTE is a trademark of ETSI

Swype and the Swype logos are trademarks of Swype, Inc. © 2010 Swype, Inc. All rights reserved.

Table of Contents

Section 1: Getting Started 6

Understanding this User Manual 6
Setting Up Your Phone 7
Charging a Battery 10
Extending Your Battery Life 12
Switching the Phone On or Off 13
Locking and Unlocking the Touch Screen 13
Configuring your Phone 14
Creating a Samsung Account 14
Creating a New Google Account 15
Setting Up Your Voicemail 15

Section 2: Understanding Your Phone 17

Features of Your Phone 17
Front View of Your Phone 18
Side Views of Your Phone 20
Rear View of Your Phone 21
Display Layout 21
Using Motions and Gestures 26
Home Screen Overview 28
Using the Multi Window 30
Customizing Your Home Screen 34
Notification Bar 39
Memory Card 41
Entering Text 42
Selecting the Text Input Method 43
Using the Google Voice Typing Feature 43
Using the Samsung Keyboard 44
Using Swype 47

Section 3: Call Functions 49

Displaying Your Phone Number 49
Making a Call 49
Making Emergency Calls 51
Dialing Options 52
Making a Call Using Speed Dial 53
Making a Call from the Address Book 55
Answering a Call 55
Call Log 55
Call Duration 58

Options During a Call 59
In-Call Options 59
Call Waiting 62
Call Settings 65
Section 4: Contacts and Your Address Book 66
Accounts 66
Contacts List 66
Adding a New Contact 67
Editing an Existing Contact 70
Using Contacts 70
Linking Contacts 71
Synchronizing Accounts 73
Address Book Options 74
Groups 76
Address Book Favorites 78
Managing Address Book Contacts 78
Section 5: Messaging 81
Types of Messages 81
Creating and Sending Messages 82
Message Options 83
Viewing New Received Messages 86
Deleting Messages 87
Message Search 88
Messaging Settings 88
Assigning Messages as Spam 91
Accessing Your Spam Folder 93
Text Templates 93
Using Email 94
Section 6: Pictures and Videos 96
Using the Camera 96
Camera Modes 97
Quick Settings 98
Camera and Camcorder Settings 99
Editing a Photo 100
Using the Camcorder 102
Gallery 103
Section 7: Applications 106
Application Icons 106
AppStore 109
Calculator 109
Calendar 110
Camera 110
ChatON 111

Chrome 113
Clock 113
Contacts 117
Downloads 117
Dropbox 117
Email 119
Flipboard 119
Gallery 120
Gmail 120
Google 121
Google Settings 122
Google + ... 123
Group Play 123
Hangouts 125
Help 125
Internet 126
Local 128
Maps 129
Messaging 130
Messenger 130
MetroZONE 131
Mobile Hotspot 131
Music 132
My Files 134
myMetro 135
Navigation 135
Phone 136
Play Books 136
Play Games 136
Play Magazines 136
Play Movies & TV 137
Play Music 137
Play Store 138
Rhapsody 139
S Memo 139
S Translator 141
S Voice 141
Samsung Apps 142
Samsung Hub 143
Samsung Link 146
Settings 150
Story Album 151
TripAdvisor 151
Video 151

Visual Voicemail 153
Voice Recorder 153
Voice Search 154
VPN Client 155
WatchON 155
YouTube 159
Section 8: Connections 162
Wi-Fi 162
NFC 166
Bluetooth 166
PC Connections 170
Mobile Hotspot 171
USB Tethering 173
Section 9: Changing Your Settings 175
Accessing Settings 175
Settings Tabs 175
Wi-Fi Settings 176
Bluetooth settings 178
Data Usage 179
More networks 180
NFC 188
S Beam 189
Nearby devices 189
Screen Mirroring 190
Kies via Wi-Fi 190
Lock Screen Settings 191
Display Settings 194
LED indicator 195
Sound Settings 195
Home screen mode 197
Call Settings 198
Blocking Mode 206
Driving Mode 206
Power saving mode 207
Accessory Settings 207
Accessibility 208
One-handed operation 210
Language and input 210
Motions and Gestures 216
Smart screen 217
Air view 218
Voice control 218
Add Account 219
Cloud 220

Back up and reset 221
Location services 222
Security 223
Application Manager 226
Battery 228
Storage 228
Date and time 229
About Device 229
Section 10: Health and Safety Information 232
Exposure to Radio Frequency (RF) Signals . . 232
Specific Absorption Rate (SAR) Certification Information 237
FCC Part 15 Information to User 239
Commercial Mobile Alerting System (CMAS) . 239
Smart Practices While Driving 240
Battery Use and Safety 241
Samsung Mobile Products and Recycling . . . 243
UL Certified Travel Charger 244
Display / Touch-Screen 244
GPS 245
Emergency Calls 245
Care and Maintenance 246
Responsible Listening 247
Operating Environment 249
FCC Hearing Aid Compatibility (HAC) Regulations for Wireless Devices 251
Restricting Children's Access to Your Mobile Device 253
FCC Notice and Cautions 253
Other Important Safety Information 253
Section 11: Warranty Information 256
Standard Limited Warranty 256
End User License Agreement for Software . . 261
Index 269

Section 1: Getting Started

This section explains how to start using your phone by configuring your hardware, setting up accounts, and setting up your voice mail.

Before using your device for the first time, you'll need to install and charge the battery and install the micro SIM card.

The micro SIM card is loaded with your subscription details, such as your PIN, available optional services, and many other features. If desired, you can also install an SD card to store media for use with your phone.

Understanding this User Manual

The sections of this manual generally follow the features of your phone. A robust index for features begins on page 269.

Also included is important safety information that you should know before using your device. This information is available near the back of the guide, beginning on page 232.

This manual provides navigation instructions according to the default display settings. If you select other settings, navigation may be different.

Unless otherwise specified, all instructions in this manual assume you are starting from the Home screen and using the available keys.

Note: Instructions in this manual are based on default settings, and may vary from your device, depending on the software version on your device, and any changes to the device's Settings.

Unless stated otherwise, instructions in this User Manual start with the device unlocked, at the Home screen.

All screen images in this manual are simulated. Actual displays may vary, depending on the software version of your device and any changes to the device's Settings.

Special Text

Throughout this manual, you'll find text that is set apart from the rest. These are intended to point out important information, share quick methods for activating features, to define terms, and more. The definitions for these methods are as follows:

- **Caution**: Provides information for the user to take care and avoid danger or risk.
- **Important**: Points out important information about the current feature that could affect performance.
- **Notes**: Presents alternative options for the current feature, menu, or sub-menu.
- **Tips**: Provides quick or innovative methods, or useful shortcuts.
- **Warning**: Brings to your attention important information to prevent loss of data or functionality, or even prevent damage to your device.

Text Conventions

This manual provides condensed information about how to use your phone. To make this possible, the following text conventions are used to represent often-used steps:

→	Arrows are used to represent the sequence of selecting successive options in longer, or repetitive, procedures.

Note: From the Home screen, press (**Menu**) → **Settings** → **Connections** tab → **Bluetooth**.

Setting Up Your Phone

Prior to use it is necessary to install both the battery and SIM into their corresponding internal compartments. The microSD™ card slot is also located in this same internal area.

Removing the Back Cover

- Remove the back cover by inserting a fingernail into the slot on the top of your phone (1) then lift the cover up (2).

Caution! Do not bend or twist the back cover excessively. Doing so may damage the cover.

Installing the microSIM Card and MicroSD card

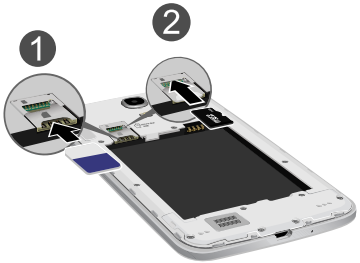
When you subscribe to a cellular network, you are provided with a plug-in microSIM card loaded with your subscription details, such as your PIN, available optional services, and many others features. You can also install a MicroSD card (memory card) to hold additional media (optional).

Important! The plug-in microSIM card information and its contacts can be easily damaged by scratching or bending, so be careful when handling, inserting, or removing the card. Keep all SIM cards out of reach of small children.

Important! Before removing or replacing the microSIM card, make sure the phone is switched off. To turn the phone off, hold down the Power key until the Device options pop up displays, then tap **Power off**.

Note: MicroSD cards should be formatted within the Storage menu. Using an older or slow microSD card can affect camera performance, especially for video recording.

1. Carefully slide the microSIM card under the bottom metal plate into the SIM card socket (as shown) until the card locks into place.
   - Make sure that the card's gold contacts face into the phone and that the upper-left angled corner of the card is positioned as shown.



Note: If the card is not inserted correctly, the phone will not detect it and no service will be available. If this happens, turn off the device, remove the card, and reinstall the card in the correct orientation.

2. To insert a MicroSD card (optional), carefully slide the MicroSD card under the top metal plate into the MicroSD card socket (as shown) until the card locks into place.

Installing the Battery

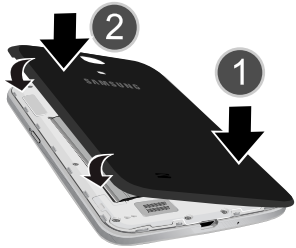
1. Insert the battery into the opening on the back of the phone, making sure the connectors align (1).

Important! Before removing or replacing the battery, make sure the phone is switched off. To turn the phone off, hold down the Power key until the Device options pop up displays, then tap **Power off**.

2. Gently press down to secure the battery (2).

Installing the Back Cover

1. Place the battery cover onto the back of the phone (1) and press down (2).



2. Press along the edge of the back cover (3) until you have a secure seal.

Note: Make sure the battery is properly installed before switching on the phone.

Charging a Battery

Your device is powered by a rechargeable Li-ion battery. The Travel Charger that is used to charge the battery, is included with your device. Use only Samsung-approved batteries and chargers.

Note: You must fully charge the battery before using your phone for the first time. A discharged battery recharges fully in approximately 4 hours.

Note: Long backlight settings, searching for service, vibrate mode, web browser use, and other variables may reduce the battery's talk and standby times.

Although you can use the phone while the battery is charging, doing so will require additional charging time.

Using the Travel Charger

Note: Verify that the battery is installed prior to connecting the wall charger. If both the wall charger is connected and the battery is not installed, the handset will power cycle continuously and prevent proper operation. Failure to unplug the wall charger before you remove the battery, can cause the device to become damaged.

1. Plug the flat end of the Travel Charger into the Power/ Accessory Interface connector and the other end into a standard AC wall outlet.
2. When charging is finished, remove the flat end from the interface connector jack on the phone.

Warning! If your handset has a touch screen display, please note that a touch screen responds best to a light touch from the pad of your finger. Using excessive force or a metallic object when pressing on the touch screen may damage the tempered glass surface and void the warranty. For more information, refer to *"Warranty Information"* on page 256.

Note: Failure to unplug the wall charger before you remove the battery, can cause damage to the phone.

Warning! While the phone is charging, if the touch screen does not function due to an unstable power supply unplug the USB power adapter from the power outlet or unplug the USB cable from the phone.

Low Battery Indicator

When the battery is weak and only a few minutes of talk time remain, the battery icon ( ) blinks and the device sounds a warning tone at regular intervals. In this condition, your phone conserves its remaining battery power, not by turning off the backlight, but by entering the dimming mode. For a quick check of your battery level, glance at the battery charge indicator located in the upper-right corner of your device's display. Solid color ( ) indicates a full charge.

When the battery level becomes too low, the phone automatically turns off.

You can also choose to display a percentage value. Having a percentage value on-screen can provide a better idea of the remaining charge on the battery.

- From the Home screen, tap (**Apps**) ➔ **Settings** ➔

(**My device** tab) ➔ **Display** ➔ **Show battery percentage**.

Extending Your Battery Life

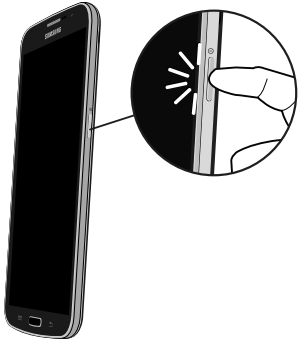
Active applications, light levels, Bluetooth usage, and GPS functionality all act to drain your battery. The following is a list of helpful tips that can help conserve your battery power:

- Reduce your backlight on time.
- Turn Bluetooth off when not in use.
- Turn Wi-Fi off when not in use.
- Deactivate the GPS when not needed. Most applications using this function will periodically query the GPS satellites for your current location; each query drains your battery.
- Do not wait until your battery is completely depleted before charging your device. Repeating this process of a complete discharge and recharge can over time reduce the storage capacity of any battery.
- Use the Power Saving feature to deactivate some hardware and interface functions.
- Check the Battery use screen to review what features or functions have been consuming your battery resources.
- Check the Running Services and close any unnecessary applications.

- Use the Task Manager feature to end/shutdown background applications that are still running. These minimized applications can, over time, cause your device to “slow down”.
- Animated wallpapers use processing power, memory, and more power. Change your Live Wallpaper to a non-animated Wallpaper gallery or Gallery image.

Switching the Phone On or Off

1. Press and hold ⏻ until the phone switches on.



2. Swipe your finger across the screen to unlock the phone.

Note: The display language is preset to English at the factory. To change the language, use the Language menu. For more information, refer to *“Changing Your Settings”* on page 175.

3. To switch off the phone, press and hold ⏻, until the **Device options** screen displays.
4. Tap **Power off** to switch off the phone.

Locking and Unlocking the Touch Screen

1. Press ⏻ to lock the touch screen.
2. Press ⏻ again to display the lock screen then swipe your finger across the screen to unlock.

Note: Swipe is the default screen locking method. To change your screen lock, see *“Lock Screen Settings”* on page 191.

Configuring your Phone

When you first turn on your phone, you will need to set up a few things.

1. Select a language from the associated field. English is the default language.

Note: If you are visually impaired or have difficulty hearing, tap **Accessibility** to configure the accessibility settings.

2. Tap **Next** and follow the on-screen setup instructions.

Note: You may be prompted with a notification that your activation is completed.

Note: Enabling Google location services can drain battery power.

Important! The device name is also used to provide an identification for your device's Bluetooth and Wi-Fi Direct names.

3. Tap **Finish** to complete the setup process.

Creating a Samsung Account

An active Samsung account is required to begin accessing applications such as ChatON and Samsung Hub. If you did not create a Samsung account when you first set up your phone, follow these steps:

1. From the home screen, tap (**Apps**) ➔ (**Settings**) ➔

(**Accounts** tab) ➔ **Add account**.
2. Tap (**Samsung account**).
3. Tap **Create new account**.
4. Follow the on-screen instructions to create and activate your account.

Creating a New Google Account

In order to utilize your device to the fullest extent, you will need to create a Google™ Account when you first use your device. With a Google Account, Google applications will always be in sync between your phone and computer.

If you did not create a new account during the setup procedure when you first turned your phone on, follow these steps:

1. From the home screen, tap (**Apps**) ➔ (**Gmail**). The **Add a Google Account** screen displays.
2. Tap **New** to create a new Google account.
   – or –
   If you already have a Google account, tap **Existing** to sign in and add the account to your phone.
3. Follow the on-screen instructions to add a Google Account.

Note: Once you have created a Google account, you only need to sign in.

Setting Up Your Voicemail

Your device automatically transfers all unanswered calls to voicemail, even if your device is in use or turned off. As soon as your battery is charged and the micro SIM card inserted, activate your voicemail account.

Important! Always use a password to protect against unauthorized access.

For new users, follow the instructions below to set up voice mail:

Note: Voicemail setup may be different depending on your network.

1. From the Home screen, tap (**Phone**) ➔ key until the device dials voicemail. You may be prompted to enter a password.
2. Follow the tutorial to create a password, record a greeting, and record your name.

Note: These steps may be different depending on your network.

Accessing Your Voicemail

1. From the Home screen, tap (**Phone**) ➔ .
   You may be prompted to enter a password.
2. When connected, follow the voice prompts from the voice mail center.

Accessing Your Voicemail From Another Phone

1. Dial your wireless phone number.
2. When you hear your voicemail greeting, press the asterisk key on the phone you are using.
3. Enter your password.

Section 2: Understanding Your Phone

This section outlines some key features of your phone and describes the screen and the icons that appear when the phone is in use. It also shows how to navigate through the phone and provides information on using a memory card.

Features of Your Phone

Your phone is lightweight, easy-to-use and offers many useful features. The following list outlines a few of the features included in your phone.

- LTE network with 1.7 gigahertz dual-core processor
- Android v 4.2.2, Jelly Bean Platform
- Brilliant 6.3” HD PLS TFT display
- Touch screen provides quick response to a variety of in-phone menus and options including applications, multi windows and up to seven home screens.
- Smart Switch™ compliant. For more information, see www.samsungsmartswitch.com.
- Ready access to the Internet
- Built-in Bluetooth™ and advanced Wi-Fi® technology
- Mobile Hotspot and USB Tethering capability
- Wi-Fi ® Capability
- WatchON® – Rich TV experience with Infrared (IR) remote
- Access Movies, TV Shows, Music, Games, and Books with Samsung Hub™
- Samsung Link™ to share your media content across connected devices. Cloud connectivity is enabled via the use of an external Web storage service
- Compliant with AllShare Cast Hub® (not provided)
- 8 Megapixel camera and camcorder with Front Facing camera
- GPS Navigation functionality provides real-time navigation
- Delivers data faster using 4G LTE and High Speed Packet Access Plus (HSPA+).

- Up to 64GB expandable memory slot
- Corporate and Personal Email
- Sync and update social network applications
- Apps available to download via Google Play Store™ and Samsung Hub
- Full Integration of Google Mobile™ Services (Gmail, Google+, Google Maps, Google Hangouts, etc..)
- Multiple Messaging Options: Text/Picture/Video Messaging, and Instant Messaging with Google Hangouts™
- NFC-compatible
- IR LED (Remote Control)

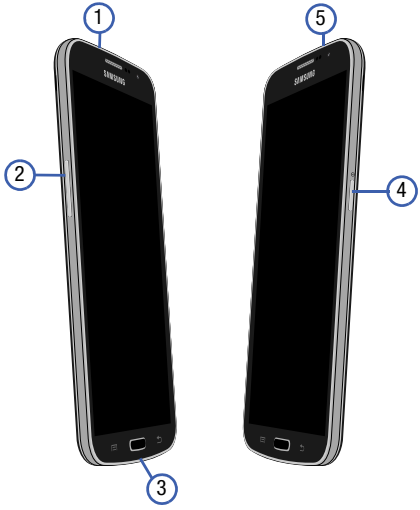
Front View of Your Phone

1. **Receiver**: allows you to hear the caller.
2. **Application icons**: you can place shortcuts to your favorite applications on the Home screen.

3. **Primary shortcuts**: allows quick access to important features such as Phone, Contacts, Messaging, Internet, and Apps. For more information, refer to *"Adding and Removing Primary Shortcuts"* on page 35.
4. **Menu key**: allows you to access sub-menus with additional options for different features and applications such as Home screen, Phone, Contacts, Messaging, and Web.
5. **Microphones** are used during phone calls and allow other callers to hear you clearly when you are speaking to them. There are two microphones on the device:
   - Bottom microphone: used during handset mode.
   - Top microphone: used while an active call is in the speakerphone mode and assists in noise cancellation (2 microphone solution).
6. **Home key**: allows you to return to the main Home screen from any Home screen or menu. Press and hold to display Recent apps, Task Manager, and Google Search. Quickly press twice to activate the S Voice application.
7. **Back key**: allows you step backwards when navigating a menu or web page.
8. **Home screen indicator**: shows which Home screen is presently displayed.
9. **Indicator icons**: shows the information needed to operate your phone, such as the received signal strength, phone battery level, time, unread Emails, missed calls, etc.
10. **Front facing camera**: allows you to take pictures of yourself when you set the camera shooting mode to Self shot.
11. **Proximity and Light sensors**: uses the ambient light level to adjust keypad access. If the light path is blocked, for example, when holding the phone close to your ear, the touch screen will turn off.
    - While talking on the phone, the sensor detects talk activity and locks the keypad to prevent accidental key presses.
    - In a bright light condition (outdoors), the sensors cause the device to increase the brightness and contrast for better viewing.

- In dim light conditions, the device decreases the screen brightness to compensate.

Side Views of Your Phone



1. **3.5mm Headset jack**: allows you to plug in headphones.
2. **Volume keys**: allow you to adjust the ringer volume while in standby mode or adjust the voice volume during a call. When receiving an incoming call, briefly press down either volume key to mute the ring tone. Adjusts text size when reading a message.
3. **Power/Accessory Interface connector**: allows you to connect a Travel Charger or other optional accessories such as a USB/data cable or a hands-free headset for convenient, hands-free conversations.
4. **Power/Lock key**: lets you power your phone on and off. Also allows you to lock or unlock the touch screen. For more information, refer to *"Locking and Unlocking the Touch Screen"* on page 13.
5. **Infrared Blaster**: Used to emit infrared signals used for controlling external devices.

Rear View of Your Phone

1. **Camera lens**: is used to take pictures and shoot videos.
2. **External speaker**: allows you to hear when the Speakerphone is turned on.
3. **Flash**: is used to provide adequate light when taking pictures in dark places.

Display Layout

Your display screen provides a wealth of information about the phone's status and options, as well as providing access to application icons. For more information, refer to *"Front View of Your Phone"* on page 18.

Indicator Icons

This list identifies the symbols you'll see on your phone's display and Indicator area:

Displays your current signal strength. The greater the number of bars, the stronger the signal.

Indicates that the Airplane Mode is active. You cannot send or receive any calls or access online information.

Displays when there is no SIM card in the phone.

Displays when there is no network available.

Displays when your phone is in Blocking mode.

Displays when there is a system error or alert.

Displays when the Smart stay feature is activated. The screen stays on as long as you are looking at it.

Displays to indicate a security warning. You are prompted to set a screen lock password.

Displays when a call is in progress.

Displays when a call is on hold.

Displays when the speakerphone is on.

Displays when a call has been missed.

Displays when a call has been muted.

Displays when Call forwarding is set to Always forward. For more information, refer to *“Additional settings”* on page 200.

Displays your battery charge level. Icon shown is fully charged.

Displays when your battery is charging. Also displays battery charge level.

Device Power Low – Shows your current battery only has between 15 and 28 percent power remaining.

Device Power Very Low – Shows your current battery only has between 5 and 15 percent power remaining.

Device Power Critical – Shows your current battery only has less than 5 percent power remaining and will immediately shutdown.

Displays when your connection to an EDGE network is active.

Displays when your phone is communicating with the EDGE network.

Displays when connected to the 3G network. 3G indicator is only seen when roaming.

Displays when your phone is communicating with the 3G network. 3G indicator is only seen when roaming.

Displays when connected to the HSPA+ network.

Displays when your phone is communicating with the HSPA+ network.

Displays when your connection to a 4G LTE network is active.

Displays when your phone is communicating with the 4G LTE network.

Displays when your phone is downloading or has downloaded a file. It will blink green when it is installing.

Displays when the an outbound file transfer is in progress.

Displays when a Play Store download has completed.

Displays when updates are available for download.

Displays when the phone is connected to a computer via a supported USB cable connection.

Displays when the phone is tethered via a supported USB cable connection.

Displays when a new text or multimedia message is received.

Displays when a new voice mail is received.

Displays when Email is received.

Displays when there is a new visual voicemail message.

Displays when a new Google+ notification has been received.

Displays when the user is prompted to set up a new Dropbox account.

Displays when the time and date for a Calendar Event has arrived. For more information, refer to *"Calendar"* on page 110.

Displays when you set an alarm to ring at a specified time. For more information, refer to *"Alarm"* on page 113.

Displays when the Sound profile is set to Mute.

Displays when the Sound profile is set to Vibrate.

Displays when the Driving Mode is active.

For more information, refer to *"Driving Mode"* on page 206.

Displays when Bluetooth is activated.

Displays when a Bluetooth device has been paired with the phone.

Displays when Wi-Fi is connected, active, and communicating with a Wireless Access Point (WAP).

Displays when there is a Wi-Fi access point available but you are not connected to it. May also display if there is a communication issue with the target Wireless Access Point (WAP).

Displays when the USB Tethering mode is active and communicating. For more information, refer to *"USB Tethering"* on page 173.

Displays when Wi-Fi is being used as a Mobile HotSpot feature is active and communicating. For more information, refer to *"Mobile Hotspot"* on page 171.

Displays when the Wi-Fi calling feature is active. Minutes used while connected to the Wi-Fi network count against available rate plan minutes.

Displays when the Wi-Fi calling feature is active and you are using it with within your current active call.

Displays when there is an error in the use or 911 registration of the Wi-Fi Calling feature.

Displays when GPS is active and acquiring a signal.

Displays when data synchronization and application sync is active and synchronization is in progress for Gmail, Calendar, and Contacts.

Displays when Near Field Communication (NFC) has been activated.

Displays when your device is connected being used to control streaming media and is connected to a Digital Living Network Alliance (DLNA) certified device using the Samsung Link application.

Displays when your device is currently sharing/ streaming media to a paired device using the Samsung Link application.

Displays when a file is being uploaded or sync'd between your device and an external Web storage location.

Displays when the uploaded or transferred file was successfully delivered.

Displays when TTY device has been inserted.

Displays when a screen capture has been taken.

Displays in the notifications window when there are too many on-screen notification icons to display. Tap to show more notifications.

Displays when storage within either the internal location or the external SD card has reached its capacity. It is recommended you either move files off or delete them to make additional room.

Displays when Power saving mode is enabled.

Displays when the keypad is active.

For more details on configuring your phone's settings, see *"Changing Your Settings"* on page 175.

Google Search Bar

The Google Search Bar provides you an on-screen Internet search engine powered by Google™.

1. From the main Home screen, swipe the screen to the left to bring up the next Home screen.
2. Tap the Google Search bar

.
3. Use the on-screen keypad to enter the item you want to search for, then tap .
4. Tap to use Google Voice Search. Follow the on-screen instructions.

Using Motions and Gestures

By activating the various motion and gesture features, you can access a variety of time saving functions.

Terms used in this user manual

Tap

Lightly touch items to select or launch them. For example:

- Tap the on screen keyboard to enter characters or text.
- Tap a menu item to select it.
- Tap an application's icon to launch the application.

Touch and Hold

Activate on-screen items by a touch and hold gesture. For example:

- Touch and hold a widget on the home screen to move it.
- Touch and hold on a field to display a pop-up menu of options.

Swipe and Palm Swipe

To swipe, lightly drag your finger vertically or horizontally across the screen. Use swipe when:

- Unlocking the screen
- Scrolling through the Home screen or a menu

To palm swipe, swipe the side of your hand horizontally across the screen. Use palm swipe when:

- Capturing the screen

Panning

To pan, touch and hold a selected icon, then move the device to the left or right to reposition it to another page. You must first activate Motion on your device. Use panning to:

- Move icons on your Home screens or Application Menus to another page.

Tilt

To activate the tilt feature, press and hold two points on the screen then tilt the device back and forth to reduce or enlarge the screen. Use tilt to:

- Reduce or enlarge the screen in the Gallery or Browser.

Turn over

Turn your phone over so that the screen faces downward. For example:

- Mute incoming calls and playing sounds by turning your phone over.

Activating Motions and Gestures

Caution! Excessive shaking or impact to the device may cause unintended results. To learn how to properly control motions, tap (**Apps**) ➔ **Settings** ➔

(**My device** tab) ➔ **Motions and gestures**. When tapped, each entry comes with an on-screen tutorial.

- **Motion**: Allows you to control your device using natural movements (on the screen).
- **Palm motion**: Allows you to control your device by touching the screen with your entire hand.
- **Gyroscope calibration**: Allows you to properly calibrate your device's touch screen.

To activate Motion:

1. From the Home screen, press (**Menu**) and then tap **Settings** ➔

(**My device** tab) ➔ **Motions and gestures**.
2. Tap the ON/OFF slider located to the right of **Motion** to turn it on

.
3. Tap the **Motion** field and then move the ON/OFF slider located to the right of each feature to turn it on.

To activate Palm Motion:

1. From the Home screen, press (**Menu**) and then tap **Settings** ➔

(**My device** tab) ➔ **Motions and gestures**.
2. In a single motion touch and slide the **Palm motion** slider to the right to turn it on.
3. Tap the **Palm motion** field and then move the ON/OFF slider located to the right of each feature to turn it on.

For more information, refer to *"Motions and Gestures"* on page 216.

Gyroscope Calibration

Calibrate your device by using the built-in gyroscope.

1. From the main **Settings** page, tap **My device** tab ➔ **Motions and gestures** ➔ **Gyroscope calibration**.
2. Place the device on a level surface and tap **Calibrate**. The device adjusts the level of the accelerometer. During the calibration process a green circle appears on-screen and the center circle adjusts to the center position.

Home Screen Overview

The main home screen is the starting point for many applications and functions, and it allows you to add items like application icons, shortcuts, folders, or Google widgets to give you instant access to information and applications. This is the default page and accessible from any menu by pressing .

Navigating Through the Home Screens

Your phone originally has three home screens but you can expand up to seven home screens. If you like, you can place different applications on each of the home screens.

- From the main Home screen, sweep the screen with your finger in either direction. The main Home Screen is located in the middle with a Home screen on each side.

Home Screen Menu Settings

When on the Home screen, press (**Menu**) and then select any of the following menu options:

- **Add apps and widgets** allows you to quickly access the Widget tab where you can then drag a selected widget to an available area on a selected screen.
- **Create folder** allows you to create on-screen folders to help organize files of application shortcuts.
- **Set wallpaper** allows you to assign the current wallpaper for the Home screen, Lock screen, or Home and lock screens. Choose from Gallery, Live wallpapers, or Wallpapers.
- **Edit page** allows you to add or remove extended screens from your device. You can have up to six extended screens (one Home screen and six Extended screens).
- **Search** displays the Google Search box that you can use to search for a key term online.
- **Settings** provides quick access to the device's settings menu.
  - The Settings menu can also be accessed by pressing (**Menu**) and then tapping (**Apps**) ➔ **Settings**.
- **Help** displays an on-screen Help file.

Navigating Through the Application Menus

Your phone initially has three Application Menus available. Follow these steps to navigate through the Application Menus:

1. At the Home screen, tap (**Apps**). The first Application Menu will be displayed.
2. Sweep the screen left or right to access the other two menus.
3. Tap one of the application icons.

Note: As you add applications, the number of Application menus that you have available will increase.

Navigating Using Sub-Menus

Sub-menus are available when you are at any Home screen or have selected a feature or application such as Phone, Contacts, Messaging, or Browser.

To access a sub-menu:

1. Press (**Menu**).

   A sub-menu will appear at the bottom of the phone screen.
2. Tap an option.

Using the Multi Window

This feature allows you to run multiple applications on the current screen at the same time.

Note: Only applications found within the Multi window panel can be active atop another current application on the screen. When launching applications that contain multimedia files (music/video), audio from both files will be played simultaneously.

Activating and Deactivating Multi window

To activate Multi window:

1. From the Home screen, press (**Menu**) and then tap **Settings** ➔ (**My device** tab) ➔ **Display**.
2. Tap the **Multi window** filed to activate the feature.

   A checkmark will appear.
3. Tap **Home** to return to the Home screen.
4. Tap the tab to open the application panel showing all the available Multi window apps.

Note: Initially upon activation, the entire apps panel is briefly displayed, then minimized to only show the tab.

To deactivate Multi window:

- Press and hold the **Back** key ( ). This action hides the Multi window tab from view.

Note: Once you have set the Multi window option on in step 1, you only need to press and hold the **Back** key ( ) to re-activate the Multi window feature.

Repositioning the Multi Window

The Multi window contains two components: tab and apps panel. The tab can be manually moved across the screen. The apps panel (containing the scrollable apps) can be relocated to lock onto the different sides of the screen (top/bottom/left/right).

To move the tab:

1. Activate the Multi window feature.
2. In a single motion, touch and hold the tab for approximately one-second, then slowly drag it to its new location **along the current** screen edge.

Note: This is a quick way to get the tab out of the way if you can't get to a button or option behind it.

To relocate the Multi window apps panel:

1. Activate the Multi window feature.
2. Tap the tab to display the apps panel (containing the scrollable apps).
3. In a single motion, touch and hold the tab for approximately one-second to detach it from the screen, then slowly drag it to its new location **along any other** available screen edge. You can move it to the top, bottom, or either side.

Customizing the Multi Window apps

The applications found within the apps panel of the Multi window can be organized by either being rearranged or removed.

To rearrange the Multi window applications:

1. Activate the Multi window feature.
2. Tap the tab to display the apps panel (containing the scrollable apps).
3. In a single motion, touch and hold a desired app until it detaches from the panel, then carefully drag it to a new location in the list of apps. Lift your finger or stylus off the screen to let go of the app and drop it into its new location.

To remove a Multi window application:

1. Activate the Multi window feature.
2. Tap the tab to display the apps panel (containing the scrollable apps).
3. Tap the **Edit** button (located at the bottom of the list) to reveal a staging area that can house any removed applications from the Multi window panel.
4. Tap **Done** once you have completed the removal process.

To restore a Multi window application:

1. Activate the Multi window feature.
2. Tap the tab to display the apps panel (containing the scrollable apps).
3. Tap the **Edit** button (located at the bottom of the list) to reveal the staging area containing any previously removed apps.

4. Locate the desired application.
5. In a single motion, touch and hold a desired app until it detaches from the staging area, then carefully drag it to a new location in the current list of apps.

Using Multi Window to run multiple apps on the same screen

Any of the apps found within the Multi window panel can be run at the same time as a current on-screen app.

Once multiple apps are running on the same screen, you can then choose to either swap their positions or maximize a desired app.

Note: Only applications found within the Multi window panel can be active atop another current application on the screen.

When launching applications that contain multimedia files (music/video), audio from both files will be played simultaneously.

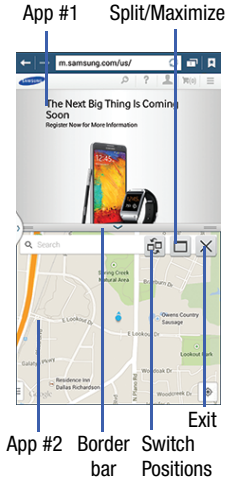
In this example we will be launching both the Internet and Maps applications.

1. Launch an application such as Maps.
   - From the Home screen, tap (**Internet**).
2. Activate the Multi window feature.
3. Tap the tab to display the apps panel.
4. Touch and hold the desired app, such as Maps, until it detaches from the panel.
5. In a single motion, drag it over the current app and drop the new Multi window app over either the top or bottom area of the current on-screen app.

Note: Once two applications are running, the device displays a split screen view containing both the initial app and the new Multi window app. Each application is still independent of the other.

To switch the arrangement of the applications:

1. With the two applications shown in a split screen, tap the Border bar to show the on-screen icons.
2. Tap the desired application area (top or bottom).
3. Locate and tap (**Switch app location**). The current apps are switched.



To increase the size of a desired application window:

1. With the two applications shown in a split screen, locate the Border bar indicating the edge of the app window.
2. In a single motion, touch and hold the Border bar then drag it to resize the desired window.

To split the current applications:

1. With the two applications shown in a split screen, tap the Border bar to show the on-screen icons.
2. Tap the desired application area (top or bottom).
3. Locate and tap (**Maximize the app**). The current apps are the both maximized.

- To exit the Multi window app, tap .

Customizing Your Home Screen

You can customize your Home screen by doing the following:

- Creating Shortcuts
- Adding and Removing Primary Shortcuts
- Adding and Removing Widgets
- Moving Icons in the Apps Menu
- Sharing an Application
- Creating Application Folders
- Adding a New Page to the Application Menu
- Changing the Wallpaper
- Adding and Deleting Home Screens
- Moving Home Screens

Creating Shortcuts

Shortcuts are different than the current Home screen Widgets that only launch an application. Shortcuts activate a feature, action, or launch an application.

Note: To move a shortcut from one screen to another, it must first be deleted from its current screen. Navigate to the new screen, then add the shortcut.

Adding a shortcut from the Apps Menu

1. Press to activate the main Home screen.
2. Navigate to the desired Home Page.
3. Tap (**Apps**) to display your current applications.
4. Scroll through the list and locate your desired application.
5. Touch and hold the application icon. This creates an immediate shortcut of the selected icon and closes the **Apps** tab.
6. While still holding the on-screen icon, position it on the current page. Once complete, release the screen to lock the new shortcut into its new position on the current screen.

Adding a shortcut via the Add to Home screen

1. Press to activate the main Home screen.
2. Navigate to the desired Home Page.
3. Touch and hold on an empty area of the Home screen.
4. Tap **Apps and widgets**, **Folder**, or **Page**.
5. Press and hold a shortcut from the available list and position it on the current screen.

Deleting a shortcut

1. Press [Home] to activate the main Home screen.
2. Touch and hold the desired shortcut. This unlocks it from its location on the current screen.
3. Drag the icon over the **Remove** icon and release it. As you place the shortcut into the Trash, both items turn red.

Note: This action does not delete the shortcut, it just removes it from the current screen.

Adding and Removing Primary Shortcuts

You can change any of your primary shortcuts with the exception of the (**Apps**) shortcut.

1. Press [Home] to activate the main Home screen.
2. Touch and hold the primary shortcut you want to replace, then drag it to an empty space on any Home screen.
3. Scroll through the Apps menu to find the shortcut you want to add as the new primary short cut.
4. Touch and hold the new shortcut, then drag it to the empty space in the row of primary shortcuts.

   The new primary shortcut will now appear on all Home screens.

Adding and Removing Widgets

Widgets are self-contained applications that reside in either your Widgets tab or on the main or extended Home screens. Unlike a shortcut, the Widget appears as an on-screen application.

Adding a Widget

1. Press [Home] to activate the main Home screen.
2. Navigate to the desired Home Page.
3. Touch and hold on an empty area of the screen.
4. Tap **Apps and widgets**.
5. Tap the **Widgets** tab at the top of the screen.
6. Press and hold an available Widget to position it on the current screen, then release the Widget.

Removing a Widget

1. Touch and hold a Widget until you can move it around on the screen.
2. Drag the Widget up to the **Remove** icon and release it.

   As you place the Widget into the Trash, both items turn red.

Note: This action does not actually delete the Widget, it just removes it from the current Home screen.

Moving Icons in the Apps Menu

1. From the Home screen, tap (**Apps**) to display your current applications.
2. Tap the **Apps** tab at the top of the screen if it is not already selected.
3. Press (**Menu**) and tap **View type**.
4. Tap **Customizable grid**. A green circle will appear next to the option.
5. Press (**Menu**) and tap **Edit**.
6. Scroll through the list and locate the icon you wish to move.
7. Touch and drag the icon to the position that you want. To move to a different page, drag the icon to the edge of the page until the page scrolls to the desired page.
8. Tap **Save**.
9. Press to return to the Home screen.

Sharing an Application

The phone's Applications menu now comes with a feature that allows you to share information about your selected applications with external users.

1. From the Home screen, tap (**Apps**).
2. Press (**Menu**) and then tap **Share apps**.
3. Place a check mark alongside those applications you wish to share information about and tap **Done**.

Note: Shared applications consist of those that have previously been downloaded from the Play Store.

4. Select a sharing method.
5. The recipient will be notified about the receipt of the new information.

Creating Application Folders

You can create application folders to hold similar applications if you wish.

To create a folder follow these steps:

1. From the Home screen, tap (**Apps**) to display your current applications.
2. Tap the **Apps** tab at the top of the screen if it is not already selected.
3. Press (**Menu**) and tap **Edit**.
4. Touch and hold the first application that you would like to move to a folder.
5. Drag the icon up to (**Create folder**) icon.
6. Enter a folder name and tap **OK**.

   A folder is displayed in the original place of the application icon with the application icon displayed on top of it. You can now drag other Apps into the folder.
7. To view information on an App, drag the App icon up to the **App info** icon to view information on the application.
8. Tap **Save**.

Adding a New Page to the Application Menu

1. Press to activate the main Home screen.
2. Tap (**Apps**) to display your current applications.
3. Tap the **Apps** tab at the top of the screen if it is not already selected.
4. Press (**Menu**) and tap **Edit**.
5. Touch and hold the first application that you would like to move to a new page.
6. Drag the icon up to (**Create page**) icon.
7. Tap **Save**. The app will appear on a new page.

Changing the Wallpaper

You can change the Wallpaper (background) of your home screens.

1. From any Home screen, touch and hold on an empty area of the screen.

   The **Home screen** window is displayed.
2. Tap **Set wallpaper**.
3. Select the location where you would like to change the wallpaper. Tap **Home screen**, **Lock screen**, or **Home and lock screens**.

4. Tap one of the following options:
   - **Gallery**: select a wallpaper from photographs you have taken with your camera.
   - **Live wallpapers**: select an animated wallpaper. This option is not available for the Lock screen option.
   - **Wallpapers**: select from many still-life wallpapers.
5. Select a wallpaper and tap **Set wallpaper**, **Done**, or **Cancel**.

Adding and Deleting Home Screens

You can add and delete Home screens. You can have up to seven Home screens.

To add a new Home screen:

1. Press to activate the main Home screen.
2. Press (**Menu**) and tap **Edit page**.
3. Tap the Home screen that contains .
   A new screen is added.
4. If desired, touch and hold the new screen and drag it to a different location.
5. Press to return to the main Home screen.
   You can now add items to your new Home screen.

To delete a Home screen:

1. Press to activate the main Home screen.
2. Press (**Menu**) and tap **Edit page**.
3. Touch and hold the Home screen you want to delete.
4. Drag it to the trash can located at the top of the screen. The page will turn red.
5. If there are items on the Home screen, the **Remove home screen page** prompt is displayed.
6. Tap **OK** to delete the page and its contents, otherwise tap **Cancel**.
7. Press to return to the main Home screen.

Moving Home Screens

You can arrange your Home screens in any order that you want.

To move a Home screen, follow these steps:

1. Press [Home] to activate the main Home screen.
2. Press [Menu] (**Menu**) and tap **Edit page**.
3. Touch and hold the Home screen you want to move.
4. Drag it to the location that you would like to place it.

   When you move a Home screen, the other Home screens are re-ordered automatically.
5. Press [Home] to return to the main Home screen.

Assigning a New Home Screen

1. From the Home screen, press [Menu] (**Menu**) and then tap **Edit page**.
2. Tap [Home]. The new Home screen then indicates this [Home] (**Home screen**) icon at the top of the selected screen.

Notification Bar

The Notification area indicates new message events (data sync status, new messages, calendar events, call status, etc). You can expand this area to display the Notification screen that provides more detailed information about the current on-screen notification icons.

1. Touch the Status bar to reveal the Notifications tab, and then drag the tab to the bottom of the screen to open the Notifications panel (1).
2. Tap a notification entry to open the associated application (2).

Clearing Notifications

To clear all notifications from the Notification panel:

1. From the Home screen, touch and hold the Notification Bar until the pull-down displays, then drag down vertically.
2. Tap the **Clear** button.

   The notifications are cleared and the panel closes.

Accessing Additional Panel Functions

In addition to notifications, the Notification panel also provides quick and ready access to separate device functions. These can be quickly activated or deactivated by toggling them on or off. You can choose the functions that will be displayed.

1. From the notification panel, tap (**Open Grid view**) to display additional options.

   The following functions (default) can either be activated (green) or deactivated (gray): Wi-Fi, GPS, Sound, Screen rotation, Bluetooth, Blocking mode, Power saving, Multi window, Screen Mirroring, S Beam, NFC, Air view, Driving mode, Smart stay, Sync, and Airplane mode.
2. Tap (**Edit**) then locate the button at the bottom of the Notifications panel screen.
3. In a single motion, touch and hold a desired function then drag it to the top two rows.
4. Tap **Brightness adjustment** to create a checkmark if you want to be able to adjust the screen brightness via the Notification panel.
5. Tap (**Back**) and then tap (**Close Grid view**) to display only your primary functions.

Memory Card

Your device lets you use a microSD™ (SD) or microSDHC™ card to expand available memory space. This secure digital card enables you to exchange images, music, and data between SD-compatible devices. This section addresses the features and options of your device's SD functionality. The device has a USB SD card mode.

Mounting the SD Card

To store additional photos, music, videos, and other applications, you must mount (install) the SD card prior to use. Mounting the SD card establishes a USB connection with your computer.

1. Insert the SD card into the SD card slot. For more information, refer to *"Installing the microSIM Card and MicroSD card"* on page 8.
2. Your SD card is scanned to see the available information on it.

Unmounting the SD card

Unmounting the SD card prevents corruption and damage to the SD card while removing it from the slot.

1. From the Home screen, press (**Menu**) and then tap **Settings** ➔ More (**More** tab) ➔ **Storage**.
2. Scroll to the bottom of the display and tap **Unmount SD card**.
3. Tap **OK**.

   For more information, refer to *"Installing the microSIM Card and MicroSD card"* on page 8.

SD card Available Memory Status

To view the memory allocation for your external SD card:

1. From the Home screen, press (**Menu**) and then tap **Settings** ➔ More (**More** tab) ➔ **Storage**.
2. The available memory for Device and SD card displays under the **Total space** and **Available space** headings.

Formatting the SD card

You can erase files from the SD card using the phone.

1. Ensure the SD card is mounted. For more information, refer to *"Mounting the SD Card"* on page 41.
2. From the Home screen, press (**Menu**) and then tap **Settings** ➔ (**More** tab) ➔ **Storage**.
3. Tap **Format SD card**.
4. At the **Format SD card** confirmation prompt, tap **Format SD card**.

Warning! Performing the next step erases all data stored on the SD card.

5. Tap **Delete all** to format or press (**Back**) to cancel.

Entering Text

This section describes how to select the desired text input method when entering characters into your phone.

Your phone comes equipped with an orientation detector that can tell if the phone is being held in an upright (Portrait) or sideways (Landscape) orientation. This is useful when entering text.

Text Input Methods

There are three text input methods available:

- **Google voice typing**: allows you to enter text by speaking.
- **Samsung keyboard (default)**: Samsung's on-screen QWERTY keypad that can be used in both portrait and landscape orientation.
- **Swype**: a new way to enter text on touch screens. Instead of tapping each key, use your finger to trace over each letter of a word.

To change the input method, see *"Keyboards and Input Methods"* on page 210.

Selecting the Text Input Method

The Text Input Method can be assigned from within one of two locations:

Settings Menu:

- From the Home screen, press (**Menu**) and then tap **Settings** ➔ (**My device** tab) ➔ **Language and input** ➔ **Default** and select an input method.

Text Input field:

1. From a screen where you can enter text, in a single motion, touch and drag the Status bar down to the bottom of the screen to open the Notifications screen.
2. Tap (**Select input method**) and select an available input method.

Using the Google Voice Typing Feature

This feature uses Google voice recognition to convert your spoken words into on-screen text.

You can use your voice to enter text using the Google Voice typing feature.

1. Tap (**Input Methods**) on the keyboard.
2. At the Listening prompt (**Speak now**), speak clearly and distinctly into the microphone.
   The text is displayed in the message as you are speaking.
3. Tap (**Done**) when you are finished.
   – or –
   Tap (**Resume**) to resume recognition.

Note: The feature works best when you break your message down into smaller segments.

4. If the text is incorrect, tap **DELETE**.
5. After you have quit speaking for several seconds, tap to return to the keyboard.

Using the Samsung Keyboard

Entering Text Using the Samsung Keyboard

This QWERTY keyboard can be used to enter text in either a Portrait or landscape orientation. The only difference between the two orientations are the sizes of the keys.

From a screen where you can enter text, rotate your phone counterclockwise to a Landscape orientation. The on-screen QWERTY keypad will display.

Changing the Text Input Mode - Keypad

There are two main keypad layout keys that will change the on-screen keys within the QWERTY keypad. The available Text Input modes are: **Sym** and **Abc**.

Sym — **Symbol/Numeric Mode**: activates the number, symbol, and emoticon keys.

ABC — **ABC Mode**: activates the default alphabet keys. Can also be set to **Abc** or **abc** by using the shift ( ) key.

Note: When in **Abc** mode, the **Sym** button will appear. When in **Sym** mode, the **Abc**/**ABC**/**abc** button will appear.

Using ABC Mode

1. If desired, rotate your phone counterclockwise to a Landscape orientation.
2. Tap the **Enter message** field.
3. Tap the desired alphabetic characters.
4. The screen initially opens in ABC mode. After typing the first letter, the shift key ( ) will change to and following letters will be lowercase.

5. Tap to input another upper-case letter or tap twice to switch to ABC mode. The shift key will change to in ABC mode. All following letters will be uppercase until you tap the shift key again.

Using Symbol/Numeric Mode

Use Symbol/Numeric Mode to add numbers, symbols, or emoticons.

1. Rotate your phone counterclockwise to a Landscape orientation.
2. Tap at the bottom of the screen. The Symbol/Numeric keyboard is displayed.
3. Tap the desired number, symbol, or emoticon characters.
4. Tap the button to access additional symbols.
5. Tap to return to Abc mode.

Predictive Text

By using the Predictive Text option, you can have next-letter prediction and regional error correction, which compensates for pressing the wrong keys on the QWERTY keyboard. Predictive text is turned on by default.

1. Press and hold (**Input Methods**) on the keyboard, then tap .
2. Tap the ON/OFF slider, located to the right of the **Predictive text** field, to .
3. In the text portion of the message screen, begin typing a word. A list of word options is displayed. Tap one of the words to replace the word that has already been typed or scroll the line of words to the left for more word choices.
4. Continue typing your message. Tap to send the message or press (**Menu**) for more options. For more information, refer to *“Creating and Sending Messages”* on page 82.

Entering Text Using Handwriting

You can enter text simply by using your finger to handwrite letters on your screen.

1. Press and hold (**Input Methods**) on the keyboard, then tap .
2. Use your finger tip to write out each character. You can print or use cursive.
3. You can write out your entire message using the Handwriting feature or press and hold (**Options**) and then tap to switch back to Samsung keyboard mode.

Samsung Keyboard Settings

For information on how you can configure your Samsung keyboard settings, see *"Samsung Keyboard settings"* on page 211.

- Touch and hold (**Input Methods**) to select from other input methods such as:
  - **Sentence characters** to place commonly used characters such as commas, ?, !, etc..
  - **Voice to text** to launch the device's Google Voice typing application to covert spoken words into on-screen text.
  - **Handwriting** to launch an on-screen handwriting area that can be used to convert on-screen patterns (text) to text.
  - **Clipboard** to launch the device's clipboard area from where you can select a current clipboard item to place in your current message.
  - **Settings** to access the Samsung keyboard settings menu.
  - **Keyboard alignment** to detach the on-screen keyboard so that you can manually dock it anywhere on the current text entry screen. Selecting the feature again redocks the keyboard into its original location using the original size.

Using Swype

Entering Text Using Swype

Swype™ is a text input method that allows you to enter a word by sliding your finger or stylus from letter to letter, lifting your finger between words. Swype uses error correcting algorithms and a language model to predict the next word. Swype also includes a tapping predictive text system.

The following example shows how to enter the word “This”. Put your finger down on the “T”, and without lifting, glide it to the “h”, then to the “i” then over to the “s”.

Enabling and Configuring Swype

The Samsung keyboard is the default text input method, so to use Swype, you must first change the default keyboard setting.

To enable Swype:

1. From a screen where you can enter text, touch and drag down from the Notifications area then tap **Select input method**.
2. Tap the **Swype** radio button. It will turn green.

   The Swype keyboard is displayed.

Swype Settings

For information on how you can configure your Swype settings, see *“Swype Keypad Settings”* on page 213.

Swype Text Entry Tips

You can access the SwypeTips application and watch a video or tutorial on using Swype. You can also use the following Swype text entry tips.

- Create a squiggle (like an S shape) to create a double letter (such as pp in apple).
- Touch and hold a key to view the punctuation menu then make a selection.
- Move your finger or stylus over the apostrophe to enter contractions.
- Double-tap on the word you want to change to correct a misspelled word, then tap the delete key to erase one character. Touch and hold the delete key to erase an entire word.

Section 3: Call Functions

This section describes how to make or answer a call. It also includes the features and functionality associated with making or answering a call.

For more information, refer to *"Call Settings"* on page 198.

Displaying Your Phone Number

- From the Home screen, tap (**Apps**) ➔ **Settings** ➔ (**More** tab) ➔ **About device** ➔ **Status**. Your phone number is displayed in the **My phone number** field.

Making a Call

1. From the Home screen, tap (**Phone**) and use the on-screen keypad to enter the number you wish to dial.
2. Tap (**Call**) to make the call.

Note: When you activate the **Auto redial** option in the Voice Call menu, the phone will automatically redial up to 10 times when the person does not answer the call or is already on the phone. For more information, see **Auto redial** on page 201.

Making an International Call

1. From the Home screen, tap (**Phone**), then touch and hold 0 +. The **+** character appears.
2. Use the on-screen keypad to enter the country code, area code, and phone number.
   - If you make a mistake, tap until the desired numbers have been deleted.
3. Tap (**Call**) to make the call.

Manual Pause Dialing

To manually call a number with pause(s) without storing it in your Contacts list:

1. From the Home screen, tap (**Phone**) and use the on-screen keypad to enter the phone number.
2. Press (**Menu**) to display the dialer sub-menu.
3. Tap **Add 2-sec pause** to add a two second pause, and use the keypad to enter the additional numbers.

Tip: You can create pauses longer than two seconds by entering multiple two second pauses.

4. Select **Add wait** to add a wait. A wait will pause the calling sequence until you enter a number or press a key.
5. Tap (**Call**) to make the call.

For more information, refer to *"Adding Pauses to Contact Numbers"* on page 69.

Correcting an Entered Number

Use the following steps to correct a mis-typed entry when dialing.

- After entering a number using the keypad:
  - If you make a mistake, tap to erase a single character.
  - Press and hold to erase the entire string of numbers.

Ending a Call

- Tap (**End Call**).

Dialing a Recent Number

All incoming, outgoing and missed calls are recorded in the **Call log**. If the number or caller is listed in your Address Book, the associated name is also displayed.

1. From the Home screen, tap (**Phone**).
2. Tap (**Logs** tab).

   A list of recent calls is displayed.
3. Tap the desired Contact to enter the **Details** page, then tap to make a call.

Making Emergency Calls

If you do not have a SIM card installed the first time you turn on the phone, the **Insert SIM card to make calls** message displays and an animated tutorial shows you how to install the SIM card.

Without a SIM card, you can only make an emergency call with the phone; normal cell phone service is not available.

Making an Emergency Call without a SIM card

1. Tap **Emergency call** from the on-screen display to make an emergency call.
2. Enter 9-1-1 and tap (**Call**). Complete your call. During this type of call, you will have access to the Speaker mode, Keypad, and End Call features.
3. Tap (**End Call**) to exit this calling mode.

Making an Emergency Call with a SIM card

The Emergency calling mode makes redialing an emergency number a 1-tap process. Before you can resume normal calling operations, you should first exit this mode.

1. From the Home screen, tap (**Phone**).
2. Enter the emergency number (example: 911) and then tap (**Call**).
3. Complete your call. During this type of call, you will have access to the Speaker mode, Keypad, and End Call features.

Note: This mode can drain your battery power more rapidly than normal calling mode.

Dialing Options

From the Home screen and Application menus, you have the option to access the Dialer and initiate a call by tapping (**Phone**) ➔ **Keypad**. From the Dialer and the Contacts screen, the following tabs are located at the top of your screen:

- **Keypad**: dials the current number entered using the on-screen keypad.
- **Logs**: displays a list of all dialed, received, and missed calls.
- **Favorites**: displays your contacts that you have marked as Favorites.
- **Contacts**: takes you to your Address Book where you can select a contact to call.

After you begin to enter numbers, the **Add to contacts** option appears so you can save the Contact if needed.

From the keypad screen, use one of the following options:

- **Voicemail** ( ) to access your Voicemail service.
- **Call** ( ) to call the entered number.
- **Delete** ( ) to delete digits from the current number.

To view additional dialing options:

- After entering a number, tap (**Menu**):
  - **Send message** to send the current caller a text message while still maintaining the current call active.
  - **Add to contacts** to add the current number to either a new or existing Contacts entry.
  - **Speed dial setting** to access the Speed dialing setting menu where you can assign a speed dial location to a current Contacts entry.
  - **Add 2-sec pause** to insert a two-second pause to enter a 2-second delay within a number string (the phone continues dialing after 2 seconds without any additional keys being pressed.

Tip: You can create pauses longer than two seconds by entering multiple 2 second pauses.

- **Add wait** to insert a hard pause within the number string (the phone waits for your input). A wait requires that any consecutive numbers be manually sent by tapping **Yes**.
- **One-handed operation on/off** to enable or disable the resize and reposition the keypad/dialer for either left (off) or right handed operation (on).
- **Call settings** to provide you access to the Call settings screen.

Making a Call Using Speed Dial

You can assign a short cut number to a phone number in your Contacts List for speed dialing.

1. From the Home screen, tap (**Contacts**) to display your Contacts List.
2. Press (**Menu**) ➔ **Speed dial setting**. The **Speed dial setting** screen displays showing the numbers 1 through 100. The number 1 is reserved for Voicemail.
3. Tap an unused number and the **Select contact** screen displays.
4. Tap a contact to assign to the number. The selected contact number will display in the speed dial number box.
5. To remove a speed dial number or change the order, press (**Menu**) to display the Speed dial setting sub-menu.
6. Tap **Change order** or **Remove**.

To make a call using Speed Dial:

1. Tap (**Phone**) ➔ **Keypad**.
2. From the Dialer, touch and hold the speed dial number. If the speed dial number is more than 1 digit long, enter the first digits, then hold the last digit.

Changing a Speed Dial Entry Order

1. From the Home screen, tap (**Phone**) ➔ **Keypad** tab.
2. Press (**Menu**) and then tap **Speed dial setting**.

Important! The number 1 is reserved for Voicemail and another number cannot be assigned to this slot.

3. Press (**Menu**) and then tap **Change order**.
4. Tap the current entry then tap the new target speed dial location.

Note: Tapping 2 existing speed dial locations causes the entries to switch positions.

5. Tap **Done**. to store the change.
6. Press (**Back**) to return to the previous screen.

Removing a Speed Dial Entry

1. From the Home screen, tap (**Phone**) ➔ **Keypad** tab.
2. Press (**Menu**) and then tap **Speed dial setting**.
3. Touch and hold a existing on-screen speed dial location and select **Remove** from the context menu.

   – or –

   Press (**Menu**) and then tap **Remove**. Tap an entry and select (**Remove entry**). Select either **Done** (to complete the deletion) or **Cancel** (to exit).
4. Press (**Back**) to return to the previous screen.

Making a Call from the Address Book

You can store phone numbers that you use regularly on the SIM card or in the phone's memory. These entries are collectively called the **Address Book**.

Answering a Call

When a call is received the phone rings and displays the caller's phone number, or name if stored in the Address Book.

1. At the incoming call screen:
   - Touch and drag in any direction to answer the call.
   - Touch and drag in any direction to reject the call and send it to your voicemail.
   - Touch and drag the **Reject call with message** tab upward and tap a predefined text message to send to the caller.
     - I'm driving
     - I'm at the movie theater
     - I'm in class
     - I'm in a meeting
     - Sorry, I'm busy. Call back later.

   – or –

     - Tap **Create new message** to compose a new message.
2. Tap (**End Call**) to end the call.

Note: You can answer a call while using the Address Book or other menu feature. After ending the call, the phone returns to the previously active function screen.

Call Log

The phone stores the numbers of the calls you've dialed, received, or missed in the Call log. The Call log displays the details of the call.

1. From the Home screen, tap (**Phone**).
2. Tap (**Logs** tab).

   A list of recent calls is displayed. If the number or caller is listed in your Address Book, the associated name is displayed.

All calls made, received, and missed are listed. Types of calls are identified by the following icons:

- **Incoming Calls**:
- **Outgoing Calls**:
- **Missed Calls**:
- **Rejected Calls**:
- **Auto Rejected Calls**:

Calling Back a Missed Call

To call back a missed call number:

1. From the Home screen, tap (**Phone**) ➔ (**Logs** tab).

   A list of recent calls is displayed. If the number or caller is listed in your Address Book, the associated name is displayed.

2. Swipe the desired missed call to the right to call.

   – or –

   Swipe the desired missed call to the left to message.

Saving a Recent Call to your Address Book

1. From the Home screen, tap (**Phone**) ➔ (**Logs** tab).

   A list of recent calls is displayed.

2. Tap the call you want to save to your Address Book.
3. The call detail page is displayed. Tap **Create contact** to add the call to your Address Book.

   The Create contact screen is displayed.

   – or –

   If you want to replace the number for an existing contact, tap **Update existing**.

4. Enter information into the various fields using the keypad.
5. Tap **Save** to save when you are finished.

For further details about the **Address Book** feature, see *"Adding a New Contact"* on page 67.

To access additional menu options:

- Press (**Menu**) and select an available option:
  - **Copy to dialing screen** to pass the current number to your dialer and then edit the selected number before you place your next outbound call.
  - **Delete** to delete the Contacts entry.
  - **Send number** to send the current Contacts entry information to an external recipient.
  - **Add to reject list** to add the current phone number to an automatic rejection list. Similar to a block list, the selected caller will be blocked from making an incoming calls to your phone.

Sending a Message to a Recent Call

1. From the Home screen, tap (**Phone**) ➔ (**Logs** tab). A list of recent calls is displayed.
2. Swipe the entry you want to message to the left.
3. At the Message screen, tap the empty text field and use the on-screen keypad to type in a message.
4. When you are done with your message, tap (**Send**) to send.

   For more information, refer to *"Creating and Sending Messages"* on page 82.

Deleting a Call from the Call Log

1. From the Home screen, tap (**Phone**) ➔ (**Logs** tab). A list of recent calls is displayed.
2. Touch and hold the call you want to delete from the Call log.
3. Tap **Delete**.
4. At the **Delete log** prompt, tap **Delete**.

   The call is deleted from the Call log.

Adding a Call to the Reject List

1. From the Home screen, tap (**Phone**) ➔ (**Logs** tab). A list of recent calls is displayed.
2. Touch and hold the call you want to add to the Reject List.
3. Tap **Add to reject list**.
4. At the **Add to reject list** prompt, tap **OK**.

   Future calls from this number will be rejected and sent to your voicemail.

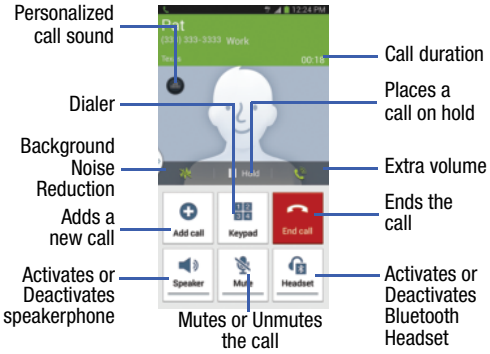
Call Duration

1. From the Home screen, tap ➔ **Logs** .
2. Press (**Menu**) ➔ **Call duration**.
3. The following times are displayed for Voice and Data:
   - **Last call**: shows the length of time for the last call.
   - **Dialed calls**: shows the total length of time for all calls made.
   - **Received calls**: shows the total length of time for all calls received.
   - **All calls**: shows the total length of time for all calls made and received.

4. You may reset these times to zero by pressing (**Menu**) then tapping **Reset**.

Options During a Call

Your phone provides a number of control functions that you can use during a call.



Note: Noise reduction and Extra volume features are disabled while using Wi-Fi Calling.

Adjusting the Call Volume

During a call, to adjust the volume, use the **Volume** keys on the left side of the phone.

- Press the **Up** volume key to increase the volume level and press the **Down** volume key to decrease the volume level.

  – or –

  Quickly add more volume to the incoming audio by tapping (**Extra volume**).

From the Home screen, you can also adjust the ringer volume using these same keys.

In-Call Options

During an active call there are several functions available by tapping a corresponding on-screen button.

- **Hold**: place the current active call on hold.
- **Add call**: displays the dialer so you can call another person.
- **Keypad**: displays the on-screen keypad, where you can enter number using DTMF (Dual Tone Multi-Frequency).
- **End call**: terminates the call.
- **Speaker**: routes the phone's audio through either the speaker or through the earpiece.

– Tap **Speaker** to route the audio through the speaker. (You can adjust the speaker volume using the volume keys.) A green line will appear under the Speaker button.
– Tap **Speaker** again to use the phone's earpiece (see *"Using the Speakerphone"* on page 63). The green line will disappear when Speaker is not activated.

- **Mute/Unmute** turn the onboard microphone either on or off.
  – Tap **Mute** during a call to mute the microphone. A green line will appear under the Mute button.
  – Tap **Mute** again to unmute the microphone. The green line will disappear when Mute is not activated.
- **Headset** connects to a Bluetooth headset.
  – Tap **Headset** during a call to activate a Bluetooth headset. A green line will appear under the Headset button.
  – Tap **Headset** again to de-activate the Bluetooth headset. The green line will disappear when the Headset is not activated.

More In-call Options

During a call you can save the current caller's information to the Contacts list, or create a Memo.

- Press (**Menu**) and then select an available in-call option:
  - **Contacts**: During a call you can look up a number in the Contacts list. Browse the Contacts list for the information you need.
  - **Memo**: During a call it may be necessary to create a new memo via an available pop up screen.
  - **Message**: During a call you can create a message.
    – Tap **Message** ➔ (**Compose**).
    – Address and create the message.
    – Review your message and tap (**Send**).
  - **One-handed operation on/off** to enable or disable the resize and reposition the keypad/dialer for either left (off) or right handed operation (on). For more information, refer to *"One-handed operation"* on page 210.

Personalizing the Call Sound Setting

During a call it may be necessary to adjust the sound of the incoming call by selecting an audio equalizer setting for the current call.

1. From the call screen, tap (**Personalize call sound**).
2. Confirm the option is enabled .
3. Select an available option. Choose from: Off, Soft sound, Clear sound, Adapt Sound left, or Adapt Sound right.

Activating Noise Reduction

During a call it may be necessary to activate the noise reduction feature. Activating this feature can improve the quality of your conversation by reducing ambient noise. Noise reduction in on by default.

1. Press to turn **Noise reduction off**.
2. Press to turn **Noise reduction on**.

Placing a Call on Hold

You can place the current call on hold at any point during a conversation. You can also make another call while you have a call in progress if your network supports this service.

1. While on a call, tap (**Hold**). This action places the current caller on hold.
2. You can later reactivate this call by tapping (**Unhold**).

To make a new call while you have a call in progress:

1. Tap (**Hold**).
2. Tap (**Add call**) to display the dialer.
3. Enter the new number and tap .

   Once connected, the active call will appear in a large box at the top of your screen and the call on hold will appear in a smaller box in the middle of your screen.

To end a call on hold:

1. Tap (**End Call**) to disconnect the active call.
2. The call on hold will now become the active call. Tap (**End Call**) to end the call.

Switching Between Calls

When you have an active call and a call on hold, you may switch between the two calls, changing the one on hold to active and placing the other on hold.

1. Tap (Swap) (**Swap**).

   The current call (caller #2) is placed on hold and the previous call on hold (caller #1) is then reactivated so that you can continue conversing with that person. The active call will appear in a green box.

2. Tap (**End Call**) to end the currently active call.

To end a specific call:

1. Tap **Swap** until the call you want to end appears in a green box.
2. Tap (**End Call**) to end the specific call.
3. Tap (**End Call**) to end the remaining call.

Call Waiting

You can answer another call while you have a call in progress if you have activated your Call waiting feature. Otherwise, the other call will go to your Voicemail box. For more information, refer to *"Additional settings"* on page 200.

1. Tap and slide to the right to answer another call.
2. Tap **Putting "Name/Number" on hold** to put the first call on hold.

   – or –

   Tap **Ending call with "Name/Number"** to end the first call.

3. To switch between the two calls, tap (Swap) (**Swap**).
   - **Swap**: Places the current call on hold and then activates the previous call. The active call will appear in a green box. Tap **Swap** again to switch back.

3-Way Calling (Multi-Party Calling)

The 3-Way or Multi-Party feature allows you to answer a series of incoming calls and place them on hold. If this service is supported by the network, all calls can be joined together. You are notified of an incoming call by a call waiting tone.

Note: The **Merge** option combines all of the calls you have established with your phone (both active and on hold). **Swap** places the current call on hold and then activates the previous call.

This feature joins all of the calls you have established with your phone (both active and on hold) into a multi-party call.

1. From the Home screen, tap (**Phone**) and use the on-screen keypad to enter the number you wish to dial.
2. Tap (**Call**) to make the call.
3. Once connected, tap **Add call**, enter the second phone number and tap (**Call**). The first caller is placed on hold.
4. Wait for the second caller to answer the incoming call and tap (**Merge**). The two calls are now joined into a multi-party call and display in the order in which they were called.
5. To temporarily leave the conference call, tap (**Hold**).
6. To rejoin the conference call tap (**Unhold**).
7. Tap (**End Call**) to end the call.

Using the Speakerphone

While in an active call, it is possible to enable the speakerphone feature.

1. Tap (**Speaker**).
   The **Speaker** button now appears as and the speakerphone is activated.
2. Use the **Volume** keys (located on the left side of your phone) to adjust the volume.
3. To deactivate the speakerphone, tap (**Speaker**).

Important! For more information, refer to *"Responsible Listening"* on page 247.

Switching off the Microphone (Mute)

You can temporarily switch your phone's microphone off, so that the other person cannot hear you.

Example: You wish to say something to person in the room, but do not want the person on the phone to hear you.

To mute your phone during a call:

1. Tap (**Mute**).
   The **Mute** button now appears as and Mute is activated.
2. Tap (**Mute**) to deactivate the Mute function and reactivate the microphone.

Bluetooth Headset

1. Tap (**Headset**).
2. The phone will scan for your Bluetooth headset. When found, connect to the headset.
   The **Headset** button now appears as and the Bluetooth headset is activated.
3. Tap (**Headset**) to deactivate the Bluetooth headset and reactivate the phone speaker.

Searching for a Number in Address Book

1. During the active call, press (**Menu**) then tap **Contacts**.
2. Tap the Address Book entry.

For further details about the **Address Book** feature, see *"Finding an Address Book Entry"* on page 70.

Call Settings

To access the Call settings menu:

- From the Home screen, tap (**Phone**) ➔ (**Menu**) ➔ **Call settings**.

  – or –

  From the Home screen, tap (**Apps**) ➔ **Settings** ➔

(**My device** tab) ➔ **Call**.

For detailed information on all of the call settings, see *"Call Settings"* on page 198.

Section 4: Contacts and Your Address Book

This section explains how to use and manage your Contacts List. You can save phone numbers to your phone's memory.

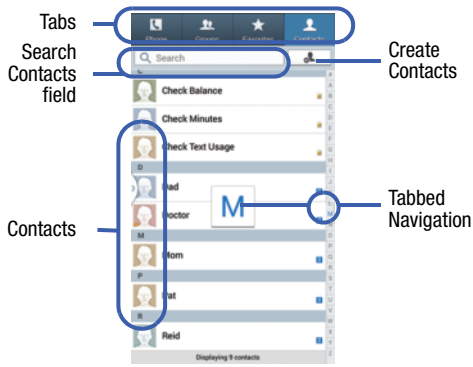
Accounts

From the Accounts menu you decide if you want applications to synchronize, send, and receive data at any given time, or if you want the applications to synchronize automatically. After determining how you want the accounts to synchronize, indicate which account to synchronize with your Contacts list.

1. Sign in to your Google account.
2. From the Home screen, press (**Menu**) and then tap **Settings** ➔ Accounts (**Accounts** tab) then navigate to the **My accounts** area.

Note: The Accounts area lists those accounts that have been added to the device and provides an **Add account** button to quickly and easily add new ones.

Contacts List



Adding a New Contact

The default storage location for saving phone numbers to your Contacts List is your device's built-in memory.

If existing Google and Corporate email accounts have been synchronized to your phone, these will be made available to your device during the creation of new entries. These new Contacts entries can be assigned or saved to synced accounts such as Phone, SIM, Google, or Corporate.

Your device automatically sorts the Contacts entries alphabetically. You can create either a **Device**, **SIM**, **Samsung account**, **Google**, or **Microsoft Exchange ActiveSync** contact.

Important! The Google and Microsoft Exchange ActiveSync account types are only visible after creating an email account of those types on your phone.

- **Device** contacts are stored locally on the device.

Note: If the phone is ever reset to its factory default parameters, contacts stored on the phone can be lost.

- **SIM** contacts are stored within the micro SIM Card.

Note: SIM contacts only store the Name and Phone number for an entry.

- **Samsung account** contacts are shared with your existing Samsung account.
- **Google** contacts are shared with your existing Google account and can also be imported to your phone after you have created a Google Mail account.
- **Microsoft Exchange ActiveSync** (also known as Work or Outlook) contacts are those contacts that are intended to be shared with either an Exchange Server or from within Microsoft® Outlook®.
- **Add new account** lets you create a new account type. Choose from Samsung account, Google, or Microsoft Exchange ActiveSync.

Note: When storing an entry into your micro SIM card, note that only the Name, and Number are saved. To save additional information for a particular contact, such as notes, email, dates, etc., it is important to save that Contact into your phone's onboard memory.

Saving a Number from the Home screen

1. From the Home screen, tap (**Contacts**) ➔ .

Note: You can also add a new contact by entering a number from the keypad and pressing and then tap **Add to contacts** ➔ **Create contact**. Continue with step 2

2. At the **Save contact to** prompt, tap on **Device**, **SIM**, or Account name.
3. Tap the image icon and assign a picture to the new entry by choosing one of three options:
   - **Image**: retrieve a previously stored image from your Gallery or from your My files folder and assign it to this entry. Tap an image to assign the image to the contact, then tap **Done**.
   - **Pictures by people**: retrieve a previously shared image from your Gallery.
   - **Take picture**: use the camera to take a new picture and assign it to this entry, then tap **Done**.
   - **S Memo**: use an image from one of your S Memos.
   - **Remove**: although not an option with a new entry, deletes any previously assigned image on an existing contact.
4. Tap the **Name** field and use the on-screen keypad to enter the full name. For more information, refer to *"Entering Text"* on page 42.

   – or –

   Tap next to the **Name** field to display additional name fields.
5. Tap the **Phone number** field.

   The numerical keypad is displayed.

   The **Mobile** button Mobile initially displays next to the **Phone number** field. If you want to add a phone number that is not a mobile number, tap the **Mobile** button and select another phone number type.
6. Enter the phone number.

   Tap to add another Phone number field or tap to delete a field.

7. Tap the **Email address** field.

   The keyboard is displayed.

   The **Home** button Home initially displays next to the **Email** field. If you want to add an Email address that is not a Home email address, tap the **Home** button and select another Email address type.

8. Enter the Email address.

   Tap ⊕ to add another Email address field or tap ⊖ to delete a field.

9. Tap any of the following fields that you want to add to your new contact:
   - **Groups**: assign the contact to Not assigned, ICE - emergency contacts, Co-workers, Family, or Friends.
   - **Ringtone**: adds a field used to assign a message tone that will sound when messages are received from this contact.
   - **Message alert**: allows you to set the ringtone for your message alerts.
   - **Vibration pattern**: allows you to set the specific type of vibration.
   - **Add another field**: tap this button to add additional fields.

10. Tap **Save** to save the new contact.

Adding Pauses to Contact Numbers

When you call automated systems, you are often required to enter a password or account number. Instead of manually entering the numbers each time, you can store the numbers in your Contacts along with special characters called pauses and waits. A pause will stop the calling sequence for two seconds and a wait will pause the calling sequence until you enter a number or press a key.

To add a pause or a wait to an existing Contact:

1. From the Home screen, tap (**Contacts**), and then tap the name or number to open the Contact.
2. Tap to edit.
3. Tap the phone number field.
4. Tap the screen at the position where the pause or wait needs to be added.
5. Tap Sym.
6. Tap **Pause(,)** to add a two-second pause or tap **Wait(;)** to add a wait, and use the keypad to enter the additional numbers. A pause will be displayed as a comma (,) and a wait will be displayed as a semi-colon (;).

7. Tap **Save** to save your changes, or tap **Cancel** to discard.

Editing an Existing Contact

When editing an existing contact, you can tap a field and change or delete the information, or you can add additional fields to the contact's list of information.

1. From the Home screen, tap (**Contacts**).
2. Press and hold the Contact that you want to edit.
3. Tap **Edit**.
4. Tap any of the fields to add, change, or delete information.
5. Tap **Save** to save the edited information.

Using Contacts

Dialing or Messaging from Address Book

Once you have stored phone numbers in the Address Book, you can dial them easily and quickly by either using their SIM card location number or by using the Search field to locate the entry.

From the Address book, you can also send messages.

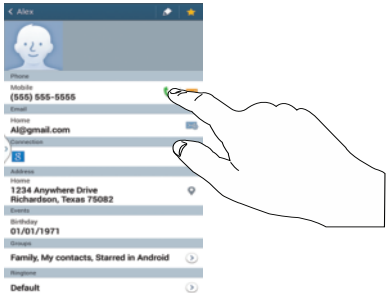
Finding an Address Book Entry

You can store phone numbers and their corresponding names onto your SIM card and phone's onboard memory. The two locations are physically separate but are used as a single entity, called the Address Book.

Depending on your particular SIM card, the maximum number of phone numbers the SIM card can store and how they are stored may differ.

1. From the Home screen, tap (**Contacts**).
2. Within the Contacts list (sorted alphabetically), tap a letter on the right side of the display to quickly jump to the contacts beginning with that letter.
3. Tap the contact you wish to call or message.

4. Tap the phone icon to make a phone call or tap the message icon to send a message.



For more information, refer to *"Creating and Sending Messages"* on page 82.

Tip: From the Contact list, sweep right over a listing to make a call. Sweep left over a listing to send a message.

Linking Contacts

Linking Contact Information

Many people now maintain multiple email accounts, social networking logins, and other similar account information. For example, a Facebook account login name might differ from a corporate email account login because they are maintained separately and for different groups of people.

This device can synchronize with multiple accounts such as Facebook, Twitter, Corporate email, and Google. When you synchronize your phone with these accounts, each account creates a separate contact entry in the Contacts list.

If one of your contacts (Amy Smith, for example) has a regular email account that you maintain in Gmail, but also has a Facebook account under her maiden and married name, as well as a Yahoo! chat account, when you merge these accounts into your Contacts list you can link all of her entries and view the information in one record.

The next time you synchronize your phone with your accounts, any updates that contacts make to email account names, email addresses, etc. automatically update in your contacts list.

For more information about synchronizing accounts, see *"Synchronizing Accounts"* on page 73.

1. From the Home screen, tap (**Contacts**).
2. Tap a contact name (the name you want to link to another entry). Typically this is the same contact with a different name or account information.
3. Press (**Menu**) ➔ **Link contact**.
   The contact list is displayed.

Note: Only contacts stored on your device can be linked.

4. Tap the second contact entry (the entry in which to link). The second contact is now linked with the first and the account information is merged into one screen.

Note: The information is still maintained in both entries, but displays in one record for easier viewing when you link the contacts.

Important! It is the first contact image that is displayed for both, and the first contact's name that is used. For example: If Amy (original entry) is joined with Julie (second entry). Julie seems to disappear and only Amy remains. Tap the Amy entry (showing the Amy image) to view both.

5. Tap area under the **Connection** bar to view the contact information you linked. The contacts and information displays with an icon next to the contact name to indicate what type of account information is contained in the entry.

Unlinking a Contact

1. From the Home screen, tap (**Contacts**).
2. Tap a contact name (the account name from which you want to unlink an entry).

Note: Typically this is the same contact with a different name or account information.

3. Tap the link icon under the **Connection** bar.
4. Tap next to entry in which you want to unlink.

5. At the **Separate contact** prompt, tap **OK**.

   The contacts are “unlinked” or separated and no longer display in the merged record screen. Both contacts now go back to being separately displayed.

Marking a Contact as Default

When you use messaging type applications, the application needs to know which information is primary (default) in a contact entry list. For example, you may have three different contact records for John Smith, so the application will be looking for the “default” number or entry.

1. From the Home screen, tap (**Contacts**).
2. Tap a Contact name.
3. Press (**Menu**) ➔ **Mark as default**. The Mark as default screen displays radio buttons next to the contact names or phone numbers of all the linked contacts. The radio button next to the default contact will be green.
4. To change the default contact, tap the radio button next to another entry that you want to be the default. The radio button will turn green, then tap **Done**.

Note: If there are multiple phone numbers assigned to an entry, assigning one as the default will automatically dial that number when the contact is selected for dialing.

Synchronizing Accounts

From the Accounts menu you decide if you want applications to synchronize, send, and receive data at any given time, or if you want the applications to synchronize automatically. After determining how you want the accounts to synchronize, indicate which account to synchronize with your Contacts list.

1. From the Home screen, tap ➔ **Settings** ➔

(**Accounts** tab) and then navigate to the **My accounts** area.
2. Select the email account containing the contacts you wish to synchronize.
3. Tap within the adjacent account field to reveal the account’s synchronization settings screen.
   - If appears within the adjacent account field, this indicates a sync error.

4. To synchronize only Contacts, toggle the active state of the **Sync Contacts** field. A green check mark indicates the feature is enabled.

Note: The process of updating your Contacts tab can take several minutes. If after 10-20 minutes, your list has not been updated, repeat step 2-3.

5. Your **Contacts** tab then reflects any updated Contact information. Syncing of contacts requires you are logged into your Gmail and Corporate accounts via the device.

Note: You can also synchronize your accounts using the Accounts option.

Address Book Options

You can access Address Book options while at the main Address Book page or while in the details page for a specific entry.

Options in Address Book

1. From the Home screen, tap (**Contacts**).
2. Press (**Menu**). The following options display:
   - **Delete**: allows you to delete 1 or more of your contacts.
   - **Import/Export**: imports or exports contacts to or from the USB storage location, SIM card, or SD card.
   - **Share namecard via**: allows you send selected namecards via methods such as Bluetooth, ChatON, Email, Gmail, Messaging, or Wi-Fi Direct.
   - **Merge accounts**: allows you to merge all of your current Contact entries with either your active Google or Samsung account. If several of your contacts are from other external sources, this allows you to “back them up” or copy them to your Samsung account. Tap **OK** to continue or **Cancel** to exit.

- **Accounts**: allows you to add and manage mobile accounts on Samsung account, ChatON, Dropbox, Google, LDAP, or Microsoft Exchange ActiveSync. This option also allows you to manually synchronize all of your current contacts with their respective accounts.
- **Speed dial setting**: allows you to set up speed-dialing.
- **Send message/email**: allows you to send a text /picture message or an email using your Google account.
- **Contacts to display**: allows you to choose to display All contacts, those on your Device, SIM card, Samsung account, Gmail, or only display contacts that are part of a Customized list.
- **Settings**: allows you to choose set the following options:
  - **Only contacts with phones**: allows you to only display contacts that have phone numbers.
  - **List by**: allows you to sort by First name or Last name.
  - **Display contacts by**: allows you to sort by First name or Last name first.
  - **Service numbers**: allows you to display or edit your service numbers.
  - **Contact sharing settings**: allows you to send all or individual contacts via Bluetooth in the form of namecards.
- **Help**: provides an on-screen Help file that covers most high level topics for Contacts.

Options at Selected Contact Screen

1. From the Home screen, tap (**Contacts**).
2. Tap a contact and at the contact's display screen, press (**Menu**).
3. The following options are displayed:
   - **History**: allows you to view the phone and message history for the contact.
   - **Edit**: allows you to change the contact's information. For more information, refer to *"Editing an Existing Contact"* on page 70.
   - **Delete**: allows you to delete the contact from your Address Book.
   - **Link contact**: allows you to link contacts with other contacts (only displays when contact is saved to SIM).
   - **Separate contact**: allows you to separate contacts that have been linked. This option only appears if the contact has been linked.

- **Mark as default**: when you have multiple contacts linked together, you can mark one of them as default (only displays when contact is saved to the phone). For more information, refer to *"Marking a Contact as Default"* on page 73.
- **Share namecard via**: allows you to send the contact's information via Bluetooth, ChatON, Email, Gmail, Messaging, or Wi-Fi Direct.
- **Add to/Remove from reject list**: allows you to add or remove the contact from your reject list. If they call while being on the reject list, the call will be sent directly to voice mail.
- **Add shortcut to home**: allows you to place a shortcut for this contact on your Home screen.

Groups

Adding a Contact to a Group

1. From the Home screen, tap (**Contacts**).
2. Press and hold a contact that you would like to add to a group.
3. Tap **Add to group**.
4. Tap a group entry.
5. Tap **Save**. The contact is added to the group.

Removing a Contact From a Group

1. From the Home screen, tap (**Contacts**) ➔ (**Groups**).
2. Tap a group entry.
3. Press (**Menu**) ➔ **Remove member**.
4. Tap all of the contacts you want to remove from this group. A green checkmark will appear next to their name.
5. Tap **Done**. The contacts are now removed from the group.

Creating a New Group

1. From the Home screen, tap (**Contacts**) ➔ (**Groups**) ➔ (**Menu**) ➔ **Create**.
2. Tap the **Group name** field and use the on-screen keypad to enter a new group name. For more information, refer to *"Entering Text"* on page 42.
3. Tap **Group ringtone** to choose a ringtone for assignment to this new group. Tap a ringtone to hear how it sounds, then tap **OK**.

   – or –

   Tap **Add** to select a ringtone from your music files.
4. Tap **Message alert** to choose an alert tone for assignment to this new group, then tap **OK**.
5. Tap **Vibration pattern** to choose a vibration audio file for assignment to this new group, then tap **OK**.

   – or –

   Tap **Create** and follow the on-screen instructions to create your own vibration pattern.
6. Tap **Add member** to add contacts to the new group.
7. Tap each contact you want to add to create a checkmark. You can also tap **Select all**.
8. Tap **Done**.
9. Tap **Save** to save the new Group category.

Editing a Caller Group

To edit a Group entry, there must be at least one member as part of the selected group.

1. From the Home screen, tap (**Contacts**) ➔ (**Groups**).
2. Tap a group entry.
3. Press (**Menu**) ➔ **Edit**.
4. Make modifications to the **Group name**, **Group ringtone**, **Message alert**, or **Vibration pattern** fields.
5. Tap **Add member** to add more contacts to this group.
6. Tap **Done**.
7. Tap **Save** to save the edited Group category.

Address Book Favorites

Once you have stored phone numbers in the Address Book, you can add them to your Favorites list.

To view your Favorites list:

- From the Home screen, tap (**Contacts**) ➔ (**Favorites**).

Adding Favorites to your Address Book

1. From the Home screen, tap (**Contacts**).
2. Within the Contacts list, touch and hold a contact that you want to add to your favorites list.
3. Tap **Add to favorites** on the displayed list.
4. A gold star will appear next to the contact in the Address Book.

Removing Favorites from your Address Book

1. From the Home screen, tap (**Contacts**).
2. Within the Contacts list, touch and hold a contact that you want to remove from your favorites list. Contacts in your Favorites list will have a gold star.
3. Tap **Remove from favorites** on the displayed list.
4. The gold star will no longer appear next to the contact in the Address Book.

Managing Address Book Contacts

You can copy, delete, and view the memory status for the Phone and SIM contacts on your phone.

Copying Contacts to the SIM Card

Note: When storing an Address Book entry into the SIM card, only the name, phone number, and email address are available as fields. Also, if you move the SIM card to another phone that does not support additional fields on the SIM card, this additional information may not be available.

1. From the Home screen, tap (**Contacts**) ➔ (**Menu**) ➔ **Import/Export**.
2. Tap **Export to SIM card**.

   The phone then displays a list of your current phone contacts.
3. Tap the contacts to place a checkmark adjacent to those entries you wish to have copied to the SIM card.

- Repeat this step for all individual entries you wish copied to the SIM or tap **Select all** to place a checkmark alongside all entries.

4. Tap **Done** to copy.
5. At the **Copy to SIM** display, tap **OK**.

   The selected numbers are copied to the SIM card.

Deleting Contacts from the SIM card

1. From the Home screen, tap (**Contacts**).
2. Touch and hold the desired contact and select **Delete**.
3. At the **Delete contact** prompt, tap **OK**.

   The selected numbers are deleted from the SIM card.

Copying Contacts to the Phone

1. From the Home screen, tap (**Contacts**) ➔ (**Menu**) ➔ **Import/Export**
2. Tap **Import from SIM**.
3. At the **Save contact to** prompt, tap on **Device** or an account name that you would like to copy the contact to.

   The phone then displays a list of your current contacts stored on your SIM card.
4. Tap the contacts to place a checkmark adjacent to those entries you wish to have copied to your phone.
   - Repeat this step for all individual entries you wish copied to your phone or tap **Select all** to place a checkmark alongside all entries.
5. Tap **Done** to copy.

   The selected numbers are copied.

Deleting Address Book Entries from the Phone

You can delete Phone or SIM entries from your phone's memory.

1. From the Home screen, tap (**Contacts**).
2. Within the Contacts list, touch and hold a contact that you want to delete.
3. Tap **Delete** on the displayed list.
4. At the **Delete contact** prompt, tap **OK** to delete the contact or **Cancel** to exit.

Copying Contact Information to the microSD Card

This procedure allows you to copy entry information saved on the phone's memory, onto the SD card.

1. From the Home screen, tap (**Contacts**).
2. From the Contacts List, press (**Menu**) and then tap **Import/Export** ➔ **Export to SD card**.
3. Tap **OK** to choose all current phone contact entries.

Using the Service Dialing Numbers

You can view the list of Service Dialing Numbers (SDN) assigned by your service provider. These numbers may include emergency numbers, customer service numbers, and directory inquiries.

1. From the Home screen, tap (**Contacts**) ➔ (**Menu**) ➔ **Settings**.
2. Tap **Service numbers**.
3. Scroll through the available numbers (if available).
4. Tap a number and the call is made.

Note: This menu is available only when your SIM card supports Service Dialing Numbers.

Section 5: Messaging

This section describes how to send and receive different types of messages. It also includes the features and functionality associated with messaging.

Types of Messages

Your phone provides the following message types:

- Text Messages
- Multimedia (Picture, Video, and Audio) Messages
- Email and Gmail Messages
- Messages
- Hangouts (replaces Google Talk)
- Google+ and Messenger Messages
- ChatON

The Short Message Service (SMS) lets you send and receive text messages to and from other mobile phones or email addresses. To use this feature, you may need to subscribe to your service provider's message service.

The Multimedia Messaging Service (MMS) lets you send and receive multimedia messages (such as picture, video, and audio messages) to and from other mobile phones or email addresses. To use this feature, you may need to subscribe to your service provider's multimedia message service.

Important! When creating a message, adding an image, a sound file, or a video clip to a text message changes the message from a text message to a multimedia message.

Messaging icons are displayed at the top of the screen and indicate when messages are received and their type. For more information, refer to *"Indicator Icons"* on page 21.

Note: The Messages application can also be accessed from the Home screen by pressing and then tapping (**Apps**) ➔ (**Messaging**).

Creating and Sending Messages

1. From the main Home screen, tap (**Messaging**) ➔ (**Compose**).
2. Tap on the **Enter recipient** field to manually enter a recipient.

   – or –

   Tap to select from one of the following:

   - **Groups**: to select a recipient from the Group list.
   - **Favorites**: to select a recipient from the Favorites list.
   - **Contacts**: to select a recipient from your Contacts list (valid entries must have a wireless phone number or email address).
   - **Logs**: to select a recipient from a list of recently sent messages.
3. If adding a recipient from your Contacts, tap the contact to place a checkmark then tap **Done**.

   The contact will be placed in the recipient field.

Note: Delete any unnecessary members by tapping their name/number in the recipient area and selecting **Delete**.

Note: For the Groups option, if the number of recipients is less than 10, all members in the group will be added. You will need to delete any unnecessary members in the list by selecting the trash can icon and deleting unwanted entries.

Note: Enter additional recipients by separating each entry with a semicolon (;) then using the previous procedure.

4. Tap the **Enter message** field and use the on-screen keypad to enter a message. For more information, refer to *"Entering Text"* on page 42.
5. Add more recipients by tapping the recipient field.
6. Review your message and tap (**Send**).

Note: If you exit a message before you send it, it will be automatically saved as a draft.

Message Options

Options before composing a message

1. From the main Home screen, tap (**Messaging**).
2. From the main Messaging menu (before composing a message), press (**Menu**) to reveal additional messaging options:
   - **Search**: allows you to search through all of your messages for a certain word or string of words. Enter a search string in the Messaging Search window then tap on the keyboard.
   - **Delete threads**: allows you to delete any message thread. Select the messages to delete and a green checkmark will appear next to the message. Tap **Delete**.
   - **Draft messages**: displays the draft messages folder and its contents.
   - **Locked messages**: displays the locked messages folder and its contents.
   - **Scheduled messages**: displays the scheduled messages folder and its contents.
   - **Spam messages**: displays the spam messages folder and its contents. For more information, refer to *"Accessing Your Spam Folder"* on page 93.
   - **Text templates**: displays your available text message reply templates. For more information, refer to *"Text Templates"* on page 93.
   - **Settings**: allows you to access Messaging settings. For more information, refer to *"Messaging Settings"* on page 88.

Options while composing a message

1. From the main Home screen, tap (**Messaging**).
2. From within an open message, press (**Menu**) to reveal additional messaging options.

Note: Available options will slightly differ between new messages and messages composed within a thread.

- **Insert smiley**: allows you to add insert smiley icons images (emoticons).
- **Add text**: allows you to copy text from your contacts, calendar, or from a memo to add to your message. This is a convenient feature for adding names, phone numbers, events, etc. to your message. For more information, refer to *"Adding Additional Text"* on page 85.
- **Preview** (only in MMS): allows you to add preview the MMS message prior to delivery.

- **Add to Contacts**: allows you to add the recipient to your Contacts list. This option only appears if the recipient is not already in your Contacts list.
- **View contact**: allows you to see information on the recipient. This option only appears if the recipient is in your Contacts list.
- **Add slide**: allows you to add a new page to a message.
- **Remove slide**: allows you to remove a recently added page from a message.
- **Add subject**: allows you to enter a subject.
- **Duration (5 secs)** (only in MMS): allows you to change the duration of the image slideshow.
- **Layout (bottom)** (only in MMS): allows you to change the layout.
- **Add recipients**: allows you to enter additional recipients to the message.
- **Scheduling**: allows you to assign the current message for scheduled delivery at a designated time.
- **Add to spam numbers**: allows you to tag a number as spam so that these messages can be directly delivered to your spam folder.
- **Remove from spam numbers** allows you to unregister a number from the spam number list. This option only appears if the number was previously registered as spam.
- **Discard**: allows you to delete the current message.

Note: You must be logged into your Samsung account prior to using the S Translator feature.

- **Translate**: launches a Translate popup menu. Here you can both assign the sender's original language and assign a target language for the recipient (they will receive your message in the designated language).
  - Enable the translate feature then configure the available options as desired. Tap **OK** to store the new settings.

Adding attachments to a message

To add an attachment to your message, tap and select one of the following options:

- **Image**: allows you to tap an existing image from your Gallery or Samsung Link and add it to your message.
- **Take a picture**: allows you to temporarily exit the message, take a photo with phone's camera, and then add it to your message by tapping **Save**.
- **Video**: allows you to choose an existing video from the Videos list, then add it to your message.
- **Record video**: allows you to temporarily exit the message, record a video clip using the phone's camera, and then add it to your message by tapping **Save**.
- **Audio**: allows you to choose an existing audio file from the Audio list, then add it to your message by tapping the circle to the right of the audio so that it turns green, then tapping **Done**.
- **Record audio**: allows you to temporarily exit the message and record an audio clip using the phone's microphone. It is then automatically attached to the message.
- **S Memo**: allows you to add an S Memo that you have created.
- **Calendar**: allows you to add an event from your calendar. Select the desired event and tap **Done**.
- **Location**: allows you to attach a thumbnail of a map showing your location.
- **Contacts**: allows you to tap on an existing Address Book entry, then add it to your message by tapping **Done**.

Adding Additional Text

You can copy text such as names, phone numbers, and events from your Contacts, Calendar or a Memo.

1. While composing a message, press (**Menu**) ➔ **Add text**.
2. At the Add text screen, select one of the following:
   - **S Memo**: allows you to insert text from an existing S Memo.
   - **Calendar**: allows you to add the name, date, and time of a calendar event to your message.
   - **Location**: allows you to add an address and the link to the location on Google Maps.
   - **Contacts**: allows you to add the name and phone number of any of your contacts to your message.

- **Text templates**: allows you to add pre-defined phrases and sentences. For more information, refer to *"Text Templates"* on page 93. The information is added to your message.

Viewing New Received Messages

1. When you receive a new message, the new message icon will appear at the top of your screen.
2. Open the Notification Bar and select the message. For more information, refer to *"Notification Bar"* on page 39.

   – or –

   From the main Home screen, tap (**Messaging**) then tap the new message to view it.

   The selected message appears in the display.
3. To play a multimedia message, tap .
   - To pause playback of the multimedia message, tap .
4. To scroll through the message (if additional text pages have been added), touch the screen and in a single motion, scroll up or down the page.

Message Threads

Sent and received text and picture messages are grouped into message threads. Threaded messages allow you to see all the messages exchanged (similar to a chat program) and displays a contact on the screen. Message threads are listed in the order in which they were received, with the latest message displayed at the top.

To access message thread options:

- From the main Messaging screen, touch and hold the message to display the following options:
  - **View contact**: displays the Contact's Overview page.
  - **Add to contacts**: Adds a new number to your Contacts list. This option is only displayed if the number in not already in your Contacts list.
  - **Delete thread**: deletes the currently selected message thread.
  - **Add to spam numbers**: adds the current sender to a spam list. ny new texts from this sender are automatically blocked.

To access additional Bubble options:

- Touch and hold the message bubble within an active message conversation to display the following options:
  - **Delete message**: deletes any currently selected message bubble from the thread.
  - **Copy message text**: copies the currently selected message bubble from the thread.
  - **Lock/Unlock message**: locks or unlocks the currently selected message bubble from being accidentally deleted.
  - **Forward**: allows you to forward the currently selected message bubble to an external recipient.
  - **Copy to SIM**: copies the currently selected message bubble as a single text message within the SIM card.
  - **View message details**: displays details for the currently selected message bubble.
  - **Translate**: translates the text from the currently selected bubble into a desired language.

Deleting Messages

Deleting a single message thread

1. From the main Home screen, tap (**Messaging**).
2. Touch and hold a message, then tap **Delete thread**.
3. At the **Delete** prompt, tap **OK** to delete or **Cancel** to cancel.

Deleting multiple message threads

1. From the main Home screen, tap (**Messaging**).
2. Press → **Delete threads**.
3. Tap each message you want to delete. A checkmark will appear beside each message you select.
4. Tap **Delete**.
5. At the **Delete** prompt, tap **OK** to delete or **Cancel** to cancel.

Message Search

You can search through your messages by using the Message Search feature.

1. From the main Home screen, tap (**Messaging**).
2. Tap (**Menu**) ➔ **Search**.
3. Use the on-screen keypad to enter a word or phrase to search for, then tap .
4. All messages that contain the search string you entered are displayed.

Messaging Settings

To configure the settings for text messages, multimedia messages, Voice mails, and Push messages.

- From the main Home screen, tap (**Messaging**) ➔ (**Menu**) ➔ **Settings**.

The following Messaging settings are available within the following available tabs:

General settings

- **Delete old messages**: deletes old messages when the limit is reached, rather than having them overwritten.
- **Text message limit**: allows you to set a limit on how many text messages can be in one conversation.
- **Multimedia message limit**: allows you to set a limit on how many multimedia messages can be in one conversation.

Text message (SMS) settings

- **Delivery reports**: when this option is activated, the network informs you whether or not your message was delivered.
- **Manage SIM card messages**: allows you to manage the messages stored on the SIM card.
- **Message center**: allows you to enter the number of your message center where your messages reside while the system is attempting to deliver them.
- **Input mode**: allows you to set the input mode for your text messages. Choose from: GSM Alphabet, Unicode, or Automatic.

Multimedia message (MMS) settings

- **Delivery reports**: when this option is activated, the network informs you whether or not your message was delivered.
- **Read reports**: when this option is activated, your phone receives a request for a read reply along with your message to the recipient.
- **Auto retrieve**: allows the message system to automatically retrieve messages.

- **Roaming auto retrieve**: allows the message system to automatically retrieve while roaming.
- **Creation mode**: allows you to select the creation mode: Free, Restricted, or Warning.
  - **Restricted**: you can only create and submit messages with content belonging to the Core MM Content Domain.
  - **Warning**: the phone will warn you via pop up messages that you are creating a multimedia message which does not fit the Core MM Content Domain.
  - **Free**: you may add any content to the message.
- **MMS alert**: when this option is activated, alerts you when the messaging modes changes from an SMS (text) to MMS (multimedia) mode.

Display

- **Bubble style**: allows you to choose from several bubble styles for your messages. Bubbles are the rounded boxes that surround each message.
- **Background style**: allows you to choose from several background styles for your messages.
- **Split view**: when in Landscape mode, allows you to view both the message list and the contents of the currently selected message.
- **Use the volume key**: allows you to change the text size by using the up or down volume keys.

Push message settings

- **Push messages**: when this option is activated, allows you to receive push messages from the network.
- **Service loading**: allows you to set the type of service loading notification. Choose from: Always, Prompt, or Never.

Notification settings

- **Notifications**: when this option is activated, allows you to see message notifications on your status bar.
- **Select ringtone**: allows you to set the ringtone for your message notifications.
- **Vibrate**: allows you to activate the vibration function associated with message alerts.
- **Message alert repetition**: allows you to set the interval for new message alerts. Choose from: Once, Every 2 minutes, or Every 10 minutes.

- **Preview message**: when enabled, allows you to view a brief preview of new message text on the Status bar.

Emergency message settings

- **Emergency alerts**: allows you to configure emergency alert settings. You can enable/disable those alert categories you wish to receive. Choose from: Imminent extreme alert, Imminent severe alert, and AMBER alerts.

Note: The Presidential alert can not be disabled.

- **Emergency notification preview**: allows you to play a sample emergency alert tone. Tap **Stop** to cancel the playback.

Signature settings

- **Add signature**: when enabled, this feature allows you to create a signature at the end of your outgoing text messages.
- **Signature text**: allows you to enter a desired signature for your message.

Spam message settings

- **Spam settings**: when enabled, allows you to configure available spam settings such as:
  - **Add to spam numbers**: allows you to manually enter and assign a phone number as being sent from a spam source.
  - **Add to spam phrases**: allows you to assign a specific text phrase as belonging to a spam message. Ex: Dear friend.
- **Block unknown senders**: when active, automatically blocks incoming messages from unknown sources or blocked numbers.

Emergency Alert Configuration

This phone is designed to receive wireless emergency alerts from the Commercial Mobile Alerting System (CMAS); which may also be known as the Personal Localized Alerting Network (PLAN). If your wireless provider has chosen to participate in CMAS/PLAN, alerts are available while in the provider's coverage area. If you travel outside your provider's coverage area, wireless emergency alerts may not be available. For more information, please contact your wireless provider.

Emergency Alerts allows customers to receive geographically-targeted messages. Alert messages are provided by the US Department of Homeland Security and will alert customers of imminent threats to their safety within their area. There is no charge for receiving an Emergency Alert message.

There are three types of Emergency Alerts:

- Alerts issued by the President
- Alerts involving imminent threats to safety of life
- AMBER Alerts (missing child alert)

Customers may choose not to receive Extreme Alerts, Severe Alerts, and AMBER Alerts.

Important! Alerts issued by the President can not be disabled.

To disable Extreme, Severe, and AMBER Alerts:

1. From the main Home screen, tap (**Messaging**).
2. Press (**Menu**) ➔ **Settings**.
3. Scroll to the bottom and tap **Emergency alerts**.
4. All alerts are enabled by default (checkmark showing).
5. Tap on an alert option to disable the alert and remove the checkmark.

Assigning Messages as Spam

You can now assign either a phone number as spam or use a key term or phrase. Any message assigned as spam is automatically placed with your Spam messages folder.

To assign a phone number from Messages list as spam:

1. From the main Home screen, tap (**Messaging**).
2. Touch and hold a message from a phone number.
3. Select **Add to spam numbers** and tap **OK**.

To assign a phone number manually as spam:

1. From the main Home screen, tap (**Messaging**).
2. Press (**Menu**) and then tap **Settings**.
3. Locate and activate the **Spam settings** option.
   - **Spam settings**: when enabled, allows you to configure available spam settings.
4. Tap **Add to spam numbers** ➔ (**Add**).
   - This function allows you to manually enter and assign a phone number as being sent from a spam source.

5. Tap the **Number** field to manually enter phone number.

   – or –

   Tap to select from either your existing Logs or Contacts.

   – or –

   Tap **Match criteria** and select a parameter that must match for the spam action to take effect. Choose from: Same as, Starts with (ex: 800 or 888), Ends with, or includes.

6. Tap **Save**.

To register text phrases as spam:

Some incoming messages might not be associated with a phone number but rather an email address. In these cases, the only way to block those messages, would be assign a key used term or phrase to activate the Spam block. Ex: “Dear friend”, “Stock Alert”, or “Act Now”.

1. From the main Home screen, tap (**Messaging**).
2. Press (**Menu**) and then tap **Settings**.
3. Locate and activate the **Spam settings** option.
4. Tap **Add to spam phrases** ➔ (**Add**).
   - This function allows you to assign a specific text phrase as belonging to a spam message. Ex: Dear friend.
5. Enter a term or word into the field.
6. Tap **Save**.

To register unknown numbers as spam:

Some incoming messages might not be associated with either a phone number or email address. These incoming messages contain no information as their info is blocked by the sender.

1. From the main Home screen, tap (**Messaging**).
2. Press (**Menu**) and then tap **Settings**.
3. Locate and activate the **Spam settings** option.
4. Tap **Block unknown senders**. A green check mark indicates the feature is active.
   - **Block unknown senders**: when active, automatically blocks incoming messages from unknown sources or blocked numbers.

If an incoming message is designated in coming from an unknown sender, it is automatically assigned as spam and is now located in your Spam folder.

Accessing Your Spam Folder

Any message assigned as spam is automatically placed with your Spam messages folder.

1. From the main Home screen, tap (**Messaging**).
2. Press (**Menu**) and then tap **Spam messages**.

Text Templates

This screen displays your available text message reply templates. This is a readily accessible list of both default and user-defined text snippets that can be used to quickly reply to incoming messages.

1. From the main Home screen, tap (**Messaging**).
2. From the Messaging list, press (**Menu**) and then tap **Text templates**.
3. Tap a message to immediately insert it into your current message conversation.

To create your own text template:

1. From the main Home screen, tap (**Messaging**).
2. From the Messaging list, press (**Menu**) and then tap **Text templates**.
3. Tap (**Create text template**).
4. Enter a new text string and tap **Save**.

Using Email

Email enables you to review and create email using various email services. You can also receive text message alerts when you receive an important email.

There are currently two main types of email accounts on your phone: Gmail, Internet-based email (Gmail, Yahoo, etc..), and Microsoft Exchange (Corporate email or Outlook®).

To send and receive email messages through an ISP (Internet Service Provider) account, or if you wish to use your device to access your corporate email through a VPN (Virtual Private Network), you will first need to set up an IMAP or POP account.

Creating an Internet Email Account

1. From the Home screen, tap (**Email**).
   Your accounts screen displays with an Email setup screen displayed.
2. Enter you email address in the **Email address** field.
3. Enter your password in the **Password** field.
4. If you want to see your password as it is being typed, tap **Show password** to create a checkmark.
5. Tap **Next**.
6. At the **Account options** screen, tap any of the options you would like.
7. Tap **Next**.
8. Enter a name for this email account (optional).
9. Tap **Done**.

Creating a Corporate Email Account

Use the following procedure to configure your phone to synchronize with a corporate email account.

1. From the Home screen, tap (**Email**).
   Your accounts screen displays with an Email setup screen displayed.
2. Enter you email address in the **Email address** field.
3. Enter your password in the **Password** field.
4. If you want to see your password as it is being typed, tap **Show password** to create a checkmark.
5. If you want all of your emails sent from this email account by default, tap the checkbox to create a checkmark. This checkbox only appears if you have previously set up an email account.
6. Tap **Manual setup**.
7. Tap the **Microsoft Exchange ActiveSync** field.

8. Enter all the Exchange server information, Domain, User name and Password, then tap **Next**.
9. At the **Activation** prompt, tap **OK**.
   The **Account options** screen is displayed.
10. Enter the desired information in the different fields, then tap **Next**.
11. Enter an Account name for this account (Optional) and tap **Done**.
    Wait for the Inbox to synchronize before use.
12. Press (**Menu**) ➔ **Settings** to change the account settings.

Creating Additional Email Accounts

To create additional email accounts after setting up your first account, follow these steps:

1. From the Home screen, tap (**Email**).
   Your Email screen displays showing your emails from the active account.
2. Press (**Menu**) ➔ **Settings**.
3. Tap **Add account** to add another email account.
4. Enter the information required to set up another account. For more information, refer to *"Creating an Internet Email Account"* on page 94.

Switching Between Email Accounts

1. From the Home screen, tap (**Email**).
   Your Email screen displays showing your emails from the active account.
2. Tap the Inbox button at the top of your screen.
   Your Email accounts screen is displayed.
3. Tap the Email account **Inbox** you would like to switch to. You can also select **Combined inbox** which will display email messages from all accounts.
4. The new Email account is displayed.

Section 6: Pictures and Videos

This section explains features related to the use of the camera and camcorder on your phone. You can take photographs and shoot video by using the built-in camera functionality. Your 8 megapixel camera produces photos in JPEG format.

Important! Do not take photos of people without their permission.
Do not take photos in places where cameras are not allowed.
Do not take photos in places where you may interfere with another person's privacy.

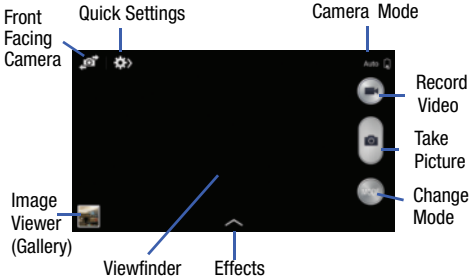
Using the Camera

Taking Photos

Taking pictures with your device's built-in camera is as simple as choosing a subject, pointing the camera, then pressing the camera key.

Note: When taking a photo in direct sunlight or in bright conditions, shadows may appear on the photo.

1. From the main Home screen, tap **Camera** to activate the camera mode.
2. Using the phone's main display screen as a viewfinder, adjust the image by aiming the camera at the subject.
3. Before you take a picture, use the **Up** and **Down** Volume keys to zoom in or out. You can magnify the picture up to x4 (400 percent).
   – or –
   Pinch the screen to zoom out or pinch outwards to zoom in.
4. If desired, before taking the photo, you can tap on-screen icons to access various camera options and settings.
5. You can also tap the screen to move the focus to the area you touch.
6. Press the **Camera** key ( ) until the shutter sounds. (The picture is automatically stored within your designated storage location. If no microSD is installed, all pictures are stored on the Phone.)



7. While viewing a picture, after you have taken it, pinch the screen outwards to zoom in or pinch the screen inwards to zoom out.

   You can magnify the picture up to x4.

8. Press ⮌ to return to the viewfinder.

Camera Modes

There are many different camera modes that you can use to help optimize your photos depending on the conditions and your experience.

- From the camera viewfinder, tap the **Mode** button MODE to change the mode to one of the following:
  - **Auto**: Automatically adjusts your camera to optimize color and brightness. This is the default setting
  - **Beauty face**: Use this to take photos with lightened faces for gentler images.
  - **Best photo**: Use this to take multiple photos in a short time, and then choose the best photos among them. Press the Shutter button to take multiple photos. When Gallery opens, tap and hold thumbnails of photos to save, and then tap Done.
  - **Continuous shot**: Use this to take pictures continuously at a rate of 3 per second. You can take up to 20 continuous pictures at a time.

– **Best face**: Use this to take multiple group shots at the same time and combine them to create the best possible image. Press the Shutter button to take multiple photos. When Gallery opens, tap the yellow frame on each face, and choose the best individual face for the subject. After choosing a pose for each individual, tap Done to merge the images into a single photo, and tap Save.

– **Sound & shot**: Use this mode to enrich pictures by adding background sounds for a few seconds. The background sound is recorded for up to 9 seconds after taking the photo.

– **Rich tone (HDR)**: Use this to take photos with richer colors and contrasts.

– **Panorama**: Use this to take wide panoramic photos. Press the Shutter button to take a photo, and then move the camera in any direction. When the blue frame aligns with the preview screen, the camera automatically takes another shot in the panoramic sequence. To stop shooting, press the Shutter button again.

– **Sports**: Use this to take fast action photos.

– **Night:** Use this to take photos in low-light conditions, without using the flash. Press the Shutter button to take multiple photos. Photos are automatically merged into a single photo.

Quick Settings

Tap at the top of the display to quickly change Camera settings. Not all of the following options are available in both still camera and video camera modes. The available options vary by mode.

Configure Camera settings.

Activate or deactivate the flash.

Activate or deactivate the voice control to take photos.

Set a timer.

Select a resolution for videos.

Activate or deactivate the sharing options.

Hide Quick settings.

Camera and Camcorder Settings

This section describes the different settings that you can configure on your camera. Not all of the following options are available in both still camera and video camera modes. The available options vary by mode.

1. From the viewfinder, tap (**Quick Settings**) ➔ (**Camera Settings**).
2. The follow settings are located under the Camera, Camcorder, and General tabs. The settings that are displayed will depend on what camera mode you are in.

Camera:

- **Photo size**: Select a resolution for photos. Use higher resolution for higher quality. Higher resolution photos take up more memory.
- **Face detection**: allows you to adjust the camera focus based on face detection technology.
- **Metering**: allows you to set how the camera measures or meters the light source: Center-weighted, Matrix, or Spot.
- **ISO**: determines how sensitive the light meter is on your digital camera. Choose from Auto, 100, 200, 400, or 800. Use a lower ISO number to make your camera less sensitive to light, a higher ISO number to take photos with less light, or Auto to let the camera automatically adjust the ISO for each of your shots.
- **Anti-shake**: compensates for camera movement.
- **Save as**: allows you to assign rich tone usage to an image.

Camcorder:

- **Video size**: Select a resolution for videos. Use higher resolution for higher quality. Higher resolution videos take up more memory.

Settings:

- **GPS tag**: attach a GPS location tag to the photo. To improve GPS signals, avoid shooting in locations where the signal may be obstructed, such as between buildings or in low-lying areas, or in poor weather conditions. Your location may appear on your photos when you upload them to the Internet. To avoid this, deactivate the GPS tag setting.
- **Review**: set this option if you want to view each picture after you take it. Select a time value.

- **Volume key**: assigns a function to the volume key. Choose from The zoom key, The camera key, or The record key.
- **Timer**: Use this for delayed-time shots. You can set the timer to Off, 2 sec, 5 sec, or 10 sec.
- **White balance**: Select an appropriate white balance, so images have a true-to-life colour range. The settings are designed for specific lighting situations. These settings are similar to the heat range for white-balance exposure in professional cameras.
- **Exposure value**: allows you to adjust the brightness level by moving the slider.
- **Guidelines**: Display viewfinder guides to help composition when selecting subjects.
- **Flash**: activate or deactivate the flash.
- **Voice control**: activates/deactivates voice control feature that allows you to verbally take a photo.
- **Contextual filename**: allows you to have your location added as part of the filename. You must first activate GPS tag described above.
- **Storage**: Select the memory location for storage.
- **Shutter sound**: Turn the shutter sound on or off.
- **Reset**: Reset the camera settings.

Viewing your Pictures

After you take a photo, you can access various options from the Image Viewer. The Image Viewer uses your Gallery. For more information, refer to *"Gallery"* on page 103.

Editing a Photo

You can edit your photos using the built-in Photo editor application on your device. The photo editor application provides basic editing functions for pictures that you take on your phone. Along with basic image tuning like brightness, contrast, and color it also provides a wide variety of effects used for editing the picture.

1. From the Home screen, tap (**Apps**) ➔ (**Gallery**).
2. Select a folder location and tap a file to open it.
3. With the image displayed, press (**Menu**) ➔ **Edit** to launch the Photo editor.

Note: To select the picture area, touch and hold the current picture.

4. Select an image area by touching and holding the image and then selecting an available option:
   - **Selection mode**: provides several on-screen selection options such as: Select area, Inverse selection, Selection size, and Selection mode (Magnetic, Lasso, Brush, Round, and Square).
   - **Select all**: select the entire area of the current image.
   - **Clipboard**: copies the currently selected area to your device's clipboard.
5. Use the following editor controls to edit your picture:

Previous: lets you undo the current operation.

Next: lets you redo the previous operation.

Cancel/Delete: exits the current photo editing session.

Save: stores the currently edited photo.

Rotate: allows you to rotate a photo in all 4 directions. You can also mirror image a photo.

Crop: allows you to crop (cut-out) an area of a photo.

Color: allows you to Auto adjust color, Brightness, Contrast, Saturation, Adjust RGB, Temperature, Exposure, and Hue of a photo.

Effects: allows you to add various effects to your photo.

Portrait: allows you to apply various face correction effects such as: Red-eye fix, Airbrush face, Face brightness, Out-of-focus, Beauty face, Face reshaping, or Spot healing.

Sticker: allows you to place various pre-created on-screen stickers atop your current image.

Drawing: allows you to add draw directly on your current picture by using either a brush/pen or eraser.

Frame: places a pre-created border style atop your current image.

6. Press (**Menu**) to access the following options:
   - **Save as**: allows you to rename your current image and save it to your gallery.
   - **Select image**: allows you to select a new image for editing.
   - **Take picture**: allows you to activate the camera and take a new image for editing.
   - **Share via**: allows you to share your saved image to Add to Dropbox, Bluetooth, ChatON, Email, Flipboard, Gmail, Google+, Group Play, Hangouts, Messaging, Picasa, S Memo, or Wi-Fi Direct.
   - **Set as**: assigns the currently saved image as either a: Contact photo, Home and lock screens, Home screen, or Lock screen.

Using the Camcorder

In addition to taking photos, the camera also doubles as a camcorder that also allows you to record, view, and send videos.

Note: The camera may not be able to properly record videos to a memory card with a slow transfer speed.

Shooting Video

Tip: When shooting video in direct sunlight or in bright conditions, it is recommended that you provide your subject with sufficient light by having the light source behind you.

1. From the main Home screen, tap **Camera** to activate the camera mode.
2. Using the camera's main display screen as a viewfinder, adjust the image by aiming the camcorder at the subject.
3. Before you take a video, use the Volume control buttons to zoom in or out. You can magnify the video up to x4 (400 percent).
4. Tap the **Video** key ( ) to begin shooting video. The red light will blink while recording.
5. You can tap the screen to move the focus to the area you touch.
6. To capture an image from the video while recording, tap . This feature is not available while the anti-shake feature is activated.

7. Tap the **Pause** key ( ) to stop the recording and save the video file to your Camera folder.
8. Tap the **Stop** key ( ) to stop the recording and save the video file to your Camera folder.
9. Once the file has been saved, tap the image viewer, then tap to play your video.
10. Press to return to the viewer.

Viewing your Videos

After you take a video, you can access various options from the Image Viewer. The Image Viewer uses your Gallery and the Video player. For more information, refer to *"Gallery"* on page 103. Also, see *"Video"* on page 151.

Gallery

The Gallery is where you view photos and play back videos. For photos, you can also perform basic editing tasks, view a slideshow, set photos as wallpaper or contact image, and share as a picture message.

1. From the Home screen, tap **(Apps)** ➔ **(Gallery)**.

   All of the Albums that hold your pictures and videos will be displayed with folder name and number of files.
2. Tap an Album and thumbnails of the contents will be displayed.

Note: If your device displays that the memory is full when you access Gallery, delete some of the files by using **My Files** or other file management applications and try again. For more information, refer to *"My Files"* on page 134.

Viewing Pictures

1. Within an album, tap a thumbnail to view a single picture.

Note: If no control icons are displayed on the screen in addition to the picture, tap anywhere on the screen to display them.

2. The following options are available at the top of the screen:
   - **Change player** : allows you to change the device the picture is displayed on if you are using AllShare/Samsung Link.
   - **Share via** : allows you to share the picture via ChatON, Group Play, Add to Dropbox, Bluetooth, Email, Flipboard, Gmail, Google+, Hangouts, Messaging, Picasa, S Memo, or Wi-Fi Direct.
   - **Delete** : allows you to delete the picture.
   - **Camera** : activates the camera.
3. Press (**Menu**) for additional options.

Viewing Videos

Note: If no control icons are displayed on the screen in addition to the picture, tap anywhere on the screen to display them.

1. Tap a video to select it.
2. Tap to play the video.
3. Press (**Menu**) for additional options.

   For video player controls, see *"Video"* on page 151.

Using S Beam to Share Pictures

This feature (when activated via NFC) allows you to beam large files directly to another compatible device that is in direct contact. These files can be larger, such as Videos, HD pictures, and other large files.You can beam images and videos from your gallery, music files from your Music, and more.

1. From the Home screen, tap **(Apps)** ➔ **Settings** ➔ (**Connections** tab).
2. If not already active, in a single motion touch and slide the **NFC** slider to the right to turn it on .
3. Tap **S Beam** and make sure the feature is turned on.

4. If not already active, in a single motion touch and slide the **S Beam** slider to the right to turn it on .
5. On the source device (containing the desired image or video), tap (**Apps**) ➔ (**Gallery**).
6. Locate and tap the selected image to open it in the preview window.

Important! Neither device must be in Lock mode or displaying the Lock screen. They must both be active and unlocked. It is recommended that the target device be on the Home screen.

---

7. Place the two active NFC-enabled devices back to back to begin.

Note: If the **Touch to beam** screen does not appear on the source device:
- Pull them apart
- Verify the image is visible in the preview window on the source device (providing the file)
- Place them together again

---

8. From the **Touch to beam** screen, tap the reduced image preview to begin the transfer.
9. When prompted, separate the two devices. After a few seconds (depending on file size) the recipient with then see the transferred file displayed on their screen.

To share multiple pictures via S Beam:

1. On the source device (containing the desired image or video), tap (**Apps**) ➔ (**Gallery**).
2. Locate the selected folder.
3. Touch and hold the first image and place a checkmark on it and all desired images.
4. Place the two active NFC-enabled devices back to back to begin.
5. From the **Touch to beam** screen, tap the reduced image preview to begin the transfer.
6. When prompted, separate the two devices.
7. The picture(s) is transferred to the other device.

Section 7: Applications

This section contains a description of each application that is available in the Apps Menu, its function, and how to navigate through that particular application. If the application is already described in another section of this user manual, then a cross reference to that particular section is provided.

Note: This manual only addresses applications that have been loaded on your device as of the date of purchase. Information concerning third party applications that you may choose to download from the Google Play Store or otherwise should be obtained from the application provider directly and not from Samsung.

Tip: To open applications quickly, add the icons of frequently-used applications to one of the Home screens. For details, see *"Customizing Your Home Screen"* on page 34. You can also add an application icon as a Primary Shortcut that will display on all Home screens. If you add an application as a primary shortcut, the application icon will not be displayed in the Applications menu.

Application Icons

The Apps menu provides quick access to the items you use most frequently.

The following table contains a description of each application. If the application is already described in another section of this user manual, then a cross reference to that particular section is provided.

For information on navigating through the Apps icons, see *"Navigating Through the Application Menus"* on page 29.

1. From the Home screen, tap (**Apps**), then tap one of the application icons.
2. Follow the on-screen instructions.
3. To return to the main Home screen, tap (**Home**).

Tip: To open applications quickly, add the icons of frequently-used applications to the Home screen or to the folders you created. For details, see *"Customizing Your Home Screen"* on page 34.

The applications that are available on your phone are listed below.

Application Screen Menu Settings

When on the Apps screen, the following menu options are available:

1. Press (**Home**) and then tap (**Apps**).
2. Press (**Menu**) and then select from the following options:
   - **Play Store**: provides quick access to the Play Store.
   - **Edit**: allows you to organize your current applications by moving them around the screen, edit or delete existing Apps folders.
   - **Create folder**: allows you to create an application folder where you can better organize and group desired apps.
   - **Uninstall**: allows you to uninstall a user-downloaded application. Only those applications that are not default to the device can be downloaded. Tap to remove the selected app.
   - **Downloaded applications**: allows you to filter the view of apps to only those applications that you have downloaded.
   - **View type**: allows you to customize the way the Apps menu listing is shown.
   - **Share apps**: allows you to share information about selected applications with external users.
   - **Hide applications**: allows you to specify which current applications are hidden from view in this menu. Once you have selected the apps, tap **Done**.
   - **Show hidden applications**: allows you to specify which previously hidden applications are can be made visible again for viewing in this menu. Once you have selected the apps, tap **Done**.
3. Press to return to the Home screen.

Accessing Recently-Used Apps

1. Press and hold (**Home**) from any screen to open the recently-used applications window.
2. Tap an icon to open the selected application.

   – or –

   Tap to go to the Task manager.

   – or –

   Tap to go to Google Search.

   – or –

   Tap to delete the record of all recently used applications.

Shutting Down an Currently Active Application

- Press and hold (**Home**) and then tap (**End all**)

  – or –

1. Press and hold (**Home**) and then tap (**Task manager**).
2. From the **Active applications** tab, tap **End** to close selected applications.

   – or –

   Tap **End all** to close all background running applications.

AppStore

The metroPCS AppStore offers Games, apps to personalize the device, applications, and more.

Note: You must have a metroPCS account to use the AppStore application.
Metro charges for some items offered at the AppStore. Always verify whether the item is free or there is a charge associated.

1. From the Home screen, tap (**Apps**) ➔ (**AppStore**).
2. Select an item to download and follow the on-screen prompts to get started.

Calculator

With this feature, you can use the phone as a calculator. The calculator provides the basic arithmetic functions; addition, subtraction, multiplication, and division. The Calculator also keeps a history of recent calculations.

1. From the Home screen, tap (**Apps**) ➔ (**Calculator**).
2. Enter the first number using the on-screen numeric keys.
3. Enter the operation for your calculation by tapping the corresponding on-screen arithmetic function key.
4. Enter the second number.
5. To view the result, tap equals (**=**).
6. To view calculator history, tap located at the top of the calculator buttons. A history of your past calculations is displayed. Tap again to display the calculator keypad.
7. To clear the calculator history, press (**Menu**) ➔ **Clear history**.
8. To enable the screen input for one-handed operation, press (**Menu**) ➔ **One-handed operation on**.
   - Tap the on-screen arrow to change the location of the keypad for use with either right-handed or left-handed usage.
9. Turn your phone sideways to the landscape position to display the scientific calculator.

Calendar

With the Calendar feature, you can consult the calendar by day, week, or month, create events, and set an alarm to act as a reminder, if necessary.

To access the Calendar:

1. From the Home screen, tap (**Apps**) ➔ **Calendar**.
2. The following tabs are available on the right side of the display:
   - **Year**: displays the Year view.
   - **Month**: displays the Month view.
   - **Week**: displays the Week view.
   - **Day**: displays the Day view.
   - **List**: displays the List view.
   - **Task**: allows you to search for tasks.
3. Tap (**Create event**) to create a new Calendar event.
4. Tap **Today** to display the current date indicated by a blue box.
5. Press (**Menu**) and select one of the following options:
   - **Go to**: displays a specific date.
   - **Delete**: allows you to delete All events, All events before today, or an individual event.
   - **Search**: allows you to search within your current events.
   - **Sync**: allows you to synchronize your calendar with one or all of your accounts. This option only appears when an account has been opened.
   - **Calendars**: displays various information such as My calendars, My task, your linked accounts, and Contact's birthdays.
   - **Settings**: displays a list of configurable settings.

Camera

Use your 13.0 megapixel camera feature to produce photos in a JPEG format. Your phone also functions as a Camcorder to take videos. For more information, refer to *"Using the Camera"* on page 96.

ChatON

Provides a global mobile communication service where you can chat with more than 2 buddies via a group chat, In this service you can send pictures, videos, animation messages (Scribbles), audio, Contacts, Calendar entries, and Location information. Create special animated messages for your friends using handwritten messages, text, photos, background images and music.

1. From the Home screen, tap (**Apps**) ➔ (**ChatON**).
2. Log in to the service and follow the on-screen instructions.

For more information, visit: https://web.samsungchaton.com.

Registering with the Service

1. Confirm you have already logged in to your Samsung account.
2. From the Home screen, tap (**Apps**) ➔ (**ChatON**).
3. If prompted to connect via a mobile network, tap **Connect**.
4. Select a country code, enter your current phone number to register with the service, and tap **Register**.
5. Choose to receive the verification code via either **SMS** (text message) or **Voice** (answering machine call) to your device.

Note: If you opt to receive the verification code via SMS, this information is sent directly to your device. Once received, the **Verification** field is automatically filled in.

6. Enter the verification code and tap **Next**.
7. From the Contact sync screen, decide if you wish to include SIM contacts to your buddies list and tap **OK**.
8. Enter your real name and tap **Done**.
9. Tap **Sign in** to log into your Samsung account
   – or –
   Tap **Not now** to continue without logging in.

Adding Your First Chat On Buddy

1. From the **ChatON** application screen, tap (**Add buddy**) and choose a search method.
   - **Suggestions**: provides a list of suggested buddies that you might know.
   - **Tell friends**: to send current buddies a download link so that they can then install ChatON.
   - **Phone number**: to search by Country code and phone number.
   - **Search by ID**: to search by using a known Samsung account ID.
2. Select a country code if it differs from yours.
3. Enter the information and tap (**Search**). Once the recipient is matched, their entry appears in the **Results** area.
4. Tap (**Add**) and confirm your new buddy appears in the Buddies tab.

Note: For more information, press (**Settings**) and tap **General** ➔ **Help**.

Using ChatON for Chatting

1. From the **ChatON** application screen, tap the **Buddies** tab.
2. Select a buddy by tapping the Chat image to initiate your chat.
3. Enter your message using the on-screen text entry method.
4. Tap **Send**.

To reply to a ChatON message:

1. While the chat session is active, tap the **Enter message** field and then type your reply message.
2. Compose your reply.
   Your texts are colored Blue and your buddy's messages are white.
3. Tap **Send** to deliver your reply.

Deleting a single message bubble

1. From the **ChatON** application screen, launch a chat session to reveal the message string.
2. Touch and hold a message bubble, then select **Delete**.

Chrome

The Google Chrome app allows you to use the Google Chrome web browser on your phone.

1. From the Home screen, tap (**Apps**) ➔ (**Chrome**).
2. Read the Google Chrome Terms of Service and tap **Accept and Continue**.
3. If you have an existing Chrome account, tap **Sign in** to bring your open tabs, bookmarks, and omnibox data from your computer to your phone, otherwise tap **No thanks**.
4. Follow the on-screen instructions to use Google Chrome.

Clock

The Clock application allows you to access alarms, view the World Clock, set a stopwatch, and use a timer.

Alarm

This feature allows you to set an alarm to ring at a specific time.

1. From the Home screen, tap (**Apps**) ➔ (**Clock**) ➔ **Alarm** ➔ (**Create alarm**).

   The following options display:

   - **Time**: tap (**Up**) or (**Down**) to set the new time for the alarm to sound. Tap AM or PM.
   - **Alarm repeat**: use this option to set the repeating status for the alarm by tapping on the days that you want the alarm to sound. Tap the Repeat weekly checkbox to have the alarm repeat weekly.
   - **Alarm type**: sets the way in which the alarm sounds when activated (Melody, Vibration, Vibration and melody, and Briefing).
   - **Alarm tone**: sets the sound file which is played when the alarm is activated. Select an option or tap Add for additional options.
   - **Alarm volume**: drag the slider to adjust the alarm's volume.

- **More**: displays the following additional options:
  - **Location alarm**: when activated, the alarm only sounds when you are at a specific location. Touch and slide the slider to the right to turn it on

then follow the on-screen instructions to enter a location.
  - **Snooze**: use this option to set a Duration (3, 5, 10, 15, or 30 Minutes) and Snooze repeat (1, 2, 3, 5, or 10 times). Tap the ON/OFF slider

to activate.
  - **Smart alarm**: tracks body movements and calculates the best time for sounding the alarm. Place the phone somewhere on your bed then the phone's movement sensor (also known as accelerometer) is sensitive enough to work from any part of the bed. Set the Interval and the Tone. Tap the ON/OFF slider

to activate.
  - **Name**: allows you to use a specific name for the alarm. The name will appear on the display when the alarm activates.

2. Tap **Save** to store the alarm details.

Turning Off an Alarm

- To stop an alarm when it sounds, touch and sweep the icon to the right.

Setting the Snooze Feature

- To activate the Snooze feature after an alarm sounds, touch and sweep the icon to the left. Snooze must first be set in the alarm settings. For more information, refer to *"Alarm"* on page 113.

Deleting Alarms

To delete an alarm:

1. From the Home screen, tap **(Apps)** ➔ **(Clock)** ➔ **Alarm** ➔ **(Menu)** ➔ **Delete**.
2. Tap the alarm or alarms you wish to delete. A green checkmark will appear next to each selection. Tap **Select all** to delete all alarms.
3. Tap **Delete**.

World Clock

World Clock allows you to view the time of day or night in other parts of the world. World Clock displays time in hundreds of different cities, within all 24 time zones around the world.

1. From the Home screen, tap (**Apps**) ➔ (**Clock**) ➔ **World clock**. The clock for your time zone is displayed.
2. Tap **Add city** to add another city to the World Clock.
3. Scroll through the list of cities to find the city you want to add, or tap the Search bar and use the keypad to enter a city to search for.
4. Tap the city you want to add. The clock for that city will display.
5. To set Daylight Savings time, press and hold a city, then tap **DST settings**.
6. Select **Automatic**, **Off**, or **1 hour**.
7. If Daylight Savings Time is selected, a sun symbol on the World Clock listing will appear.

Deleting a World Clock Entry

1. From the Home screen, tap (**Apps**) ➔ (**Clock**) ➔ **World Clock** ➔ (**Menu**) ➔ **Delete**.
2. Place a check mark alongside the city clocks you wish to delete.
3. Tap **Delete**.

Stopwatch

You can use this option to measure intervals of time.

1. From the Home screen, tap (**Apps**) ➔ (**Clock**) ➔ **Stopwatch**.
2. Tap **Start** to start the stopwatch and tap **Lap** to mark a unit of time per lap.
3. Tap **Stop** to stop the stopwatch.
4. Tap **Restart** to continue or tap **Reset** to erase all times recorded.

Timer

You can use this option to set a countdown timer. Use a timer to count down to an event based on a preset time length (hours, minutes, and seconds).

1. From the Home screen, tap (**Apps**) ➔ (**Clock**) ➔ **Timer**.
2. The **Minutes** field is highlighted and set to 1 minute. Use the keypad to set the number of minutes you want.
3. Tap the **Hours** field to set hours if desired. As you tap different fields, they will become highlighted.
4. Tap the **Seconds** field to set seconds.
5. Tap **Start** to begin the timer and tap **Stop** to pause the timer.
6. After stopping, tap **Restart** to continue or tap **Reset** to set the timer back to the original setting.

Desk clock

You can use the Desk clock when you have a desk dock and you want your phone to display the time, day, date, location, and weather conditions when it is docked.

1. From the Home screen, tap (**Apps**) ➔ (**Clock**) ➔ **Desk clock**.

   The default Desk clock is displayed.
2. Tap to display the Desk clock in full-screen mode.
3. To make changes, tap (**Menu**) ➔ **Settings**.
4. The following options are displayed while in full-screen mode:
   - **Hide status bar**: when this is checked, the status bar is hidden from view.
   - **Wallpaper**: tap to select Desk clock wallpaper from Default, Gallery, or Same as home screen.
   - **Calendar**: when this is checked, the calendar is displayed. Tap to uncheck.
   - **Weather**: when this is activated, the location, temperature, and weather condition is displayed. Touch and slide the slider to the right to turn it on ON.

- **Dock**: allows you to set your Dock settings such as Dock sound, Audio output mode, Desk home screen display, Automatic unlock, and Audio output.

Contacts

You can manage your daily contacts by storing their name and number in your Address Book. Address Book entries can be sorted by name, entry, or group.

For more information, refer to *"Contacts and Your Address Book"* on page 66.

Downloads

Provides quick access to tabs containing a list of your current downloaded files (Internet and Other).

1. From the Home screen, tap (**Apps**) ➔ (**Downloads**).

   All of your downloads are listed.

2. Tap an available file and select it for use.
3. Choose an available action such as Share via, Delete, Sort by size/date, or Clear list.

Dropbox

Works to provide access to your desktop files directly from your device. This applications allows you to bring your files with you when you're on the go, edit files in your Dropbox from your device, upload photos and videos to Dropbox, and share your selected files freely with family and friends.

The in-device application works in conjunction with a partner program placed on a target computer using an active Internet connection.

Dropbox creates a folder that automatically synchronizes its contents across all of your connected devices on your account. Update a file to your Dropbox on your computer, and its automatically updated to the same folder on your other devices.

Download the Desktop application

1. Use your computer's browser to navigate to: http://www.dropbox.com/.
2. Follow the on-screen setup and installation instructions on your target computer containing the desired files.

Important! The computer application must be installed on the computer containing the desired files. This computer must have an active Internet connection.

Note: It might be necessary to configure your router's firewall settings to allow this application to gain access to the Internet.

Accessing Dropbox on your Device

1. From the Home screen, tap (**Apps**) ➔ (**Dropbox**) ➔ **Start**.
2. Tap **Sign in**, enter your current account credentials, and tap **Sign in**.

   – or –

   Tap **Sign up for Dropbox** and follow the on-screen instructions to register for a new account.
3. Follow the on-screen instructions.
4. Initially, you will need to configure your **Camera Upload** parameters. Choose from Wi-Fi only or Wi-Fi or data plan.
   - Tap **Turn on Camera Upload** after making your selection.

Caution! Enabling this feature can incur data charges (depending on your plan) if the Wi-Fi or data plan is selected.

5. Tap (**Access Dropbox**) at the top of the application window to access the files and folders you area currently sharing from your computer.

Manually uploading a Picture to Dropbox

1. From the Home screen, tap (**Apps**) ➔ (**Camera**).
2. After the image is taken, tap the Image Viewer box at the bottom right. This previews the current image.
3. Tap the image to reveal the image options at the top of the screen.
4. Tap ➔ (**Add to Dropbox**) select a folder location and tap **Add**

Note: If your share folder is located on your computer, you will momentarily receive an on-screen popup notifying you that a new image was uploaded to your shared Dropbox folder.

Email

Email enables you to review and create email using various email services. You can also receive message alerts when you receive an important email. For more information, refer to *"Using Email"* on page 94.

Flipboard

This application creates a personalized digital magazine out of everything being shared with you. Access news stories, personal feeds and other related material. Flip through your Facebook newsfeed, tweets from your Twitter account, photos from friends and much more.

1. From the Home screen, tap (**Apps**) ➔ (**Flipboard**).
2. Tap **Tap to sign in** to sign into your previously created Flipboard account.

   – or –

   Swipe up on the Flipboard screen, and select the desired category.
3. Tap **Build Your Flipboard** to build your Flipboard.
4. Follow the on-screen instructions to use Flipboard.

Gallery

The Gallery is where you view photos and play back videos. For photos, you can also perform basic editing tasks, view a slideshow, set photos as wallpaper or contact image, and share as a picture message. For more information, refer to *"Gallery"* on page 103.

Gmail

Google Mail (Gmail) is a Web-based email service. Gmail is configured when you first set up your phone. Depending on your synchronization settings, Gmail can automatically synchronize with your Gmail account.

Creating a New Google Account

You should create a Google™ Account when you first use your device in order to fully utilize the functionality. This account provides access to several device features such as Gmail™, Hangouts™, and the Google Play Store™ applications. Before you are able to access Google applications, you must enter your account information. These applications sync between your device and your online Google account.

Signing into Your Google Account

1. Launch an application that requires a Google account (such as Play Store or Gmail).
2. Click **Existing**.
3. Tap the **Email** and **Password** fields and enter your information.
4. Tap (**Sign in**). Your device communicates with the Google servers to confirm your information.
5. If prompted, you can enable the option to stay up to date on news and offers, then tap **OK**.

Creating a Gmail Message

1. From the Home screen, tap (**Apps**) ➔ (**Gmail**).
2. From the Gmail Inbox, tap at the bottom of the screen to create a new message.
3. Enter the recipients Email address in the **To** field. Separate multiple recipient email addresses with a comma.
4. Tap (**Menu**) and select **Add Cc/Bcc** to add a carbon or blind copy.
5. Enter the subject of this message in the **Subject** field.

6. Tap the **Compose email** field and begin composing your message.
7. Tap to send.

Google

The Google Search application is the same on-screen Internet search engine that is on the Google Search Bar on your main Home screen. For more information, refer to *"Google Search Bar"* on page 26.

Use Google Search to search the Web. Google Now® (a part of the Google application) recognizes a user's repeated actions performed on the device (including access of common locations, repeated calendar appointments, search queries, etc.). This information is then used to display more relevant information to the user in the form of "cards". These scrollable on-screen cards are displayed when the Google Now application is launched.

These cards are not manually added.

The service uses your GPS, Google Search, and usage information to generate these cards automatically.

- From the Home screen, tap (**Apps**) ➔ (**Google**) and enter the search text.

Tip: Press and hold (**Home**) and then tap (**Google Now**).

– or –

Tap on the Google Search bar and say the search information.

To initially set up Google Now:

1. From the Home screen, tap (**Apps**) ➔ (**Google**).
2. Follow the on-screen instructions to review the available information.
3. When prompted, agree to launch the application. Some initial on-screen "cards" are shown. A default is the Weather card that provides updated weather information in your area.

To configure the Google Now settings:

1. From the Home screen, tap (**Apps**) ➔ (**Google**).
2. Press (**Menu**) and select **Settings**.
3. Access each desired Settings page and configure it as desired.

When these condition are met, new card information will begin to appear in the Google Now list of cards.

Note: Google Now will recognize searches and display them on your device, even if that search took place on your home computer or on another device. These searches are linked into your Google Account.

Google Settings

As Google has become more intertwined with other applications, this menu provides a quick and ready access point to configure preferences for Google+, Maps & Latitude, Locations, etc. You can also use the Search function to initiate a Google Search from this menu.

1. From the Home screen, tap (**Apps**) ➔ (**Google Settings**) and select an on-screen option.
2. Select one of the available on-screen options.
3. Follow the on-screen prompts.

Google +

Google+ makes messaging and sharing with your friends a lot easier. You can set up Circles of friends, visit the Stream to get updates from your Circles, use Messenger for fast messaging with everyone in your Circles, or use Instant Upload to automatically upload videos and photos to your own private album on Google+.

1. Sign on to your Google account. For more information, refer to *"Creating a New Google Account"* on page 15.
2. From the Home screen, tap (**Apps**) ➔ (**Google+**).
3. Select the account you want to use to sign in to Google+.

   – or –

   Tap **Add account** to create another account.
4. Follow the on-screen instructions to use Google+.
5. Visit www.google.com/mobile/+/ for more information.

Group Play

Group Play allows you to share pictures, music, and documents in real-time with your friends. You can create a group from your device or join other groups.

1. From the Home screen, tap (**Apps**) ➔ (**Group Play**).
2. Read the on-screen Disclaimer information and tap **Agree** to continue.
3. Follow the on-screen tutorials.

Creating a group

If you have media you want to share, create a group for other users to join to and then share/collaborate with what you are sharing.

The creator of the group is the leader and it the source of the shared file. All other joined members can then interact with the file being shared.

1. Connect to an active Wireless Access Point and confirm your other participants are also connected to this same Wi-Fi.
2. From within the Group Play application, tap the **Set group password** field to enable the function which requires users to enter a password prior to connecting to your new group.
3. Tap **Create group**. If previously selected, enter your group password and tap **OK**. Mobile AP is enabled.
4. Tap one of the media items listed under the **Share and play content** heading.
5. Tap to select the items you want to share (indicated by a checkmark), then tap **Done** or **OK**.
6. Have your friends sign onto Group Play from their devices (see below) and they can view your media using you as a Mobile AP.

Joining a group

A joiner is the participant of an already created group. You can only view and interact with media shared by the leader of an existing group.

1. Connect to an active Wireless Access Point and confirm your connection is this same Wi-Fi as the group leader.
2. From within the Group Play application, tap **Join group**. Your device then scans for available groups for you to join.
3. Select a group to join. Once connected, you can then select the shared content and interact with your group's shared media.
4. Press (**Menu**) and select **Help** for additional information.

Hangouts

Previously known as Google Talk™, is an updated place to hangout, share photos, and even video calls. This is a free application for instant messaging offered by Google. Conversation logs are automatically saved to a Chats area in your Gmail account. This allows you to search a chat log and store them in your Gmail accounts.

Note: The first time you use Hangouts, you will need to download the updated application from the Play Store. When the Play Store page displays, tap **Update**. For more information, refer to *"Play Store"* on page 138.

1. Log on to your Google account if you have not already done so. For more information, refer to *"Creating a New Google Account"* on page 15.
2. From the Home screen, tap (**Apps**) ➔ (**Hangouts**).
3. The first time you access Hangouts, tap **Confirm** to confirm your mobile number. If the number is not correct, tap **Edit Number** to change it.
4. Begin using Hangouts.
5. Press (**Menu**) ➔ **Help** for more information on using Hangouts.

Help

Provides access to built-in Help information.

1. From the Home screen, tap (**Apps**) ➔ (**Help**).
2. Select an on-screen topics for more information:
   - **New features**: provides help on all of the new features and applications such as Air view, Motion, Smart screen, Story Album, and Group Play.
   - **Basics**: provides basic information on using your device.
   - **Applications**: provides information on how to use basic applications like Contacts, Email, S Memo, Internet, Camera, etc.
   - **Settings**: provides information on settings for Wi-Fi, Bluetooth, Ringtone, Power saving mode, NFC, and Screen Mirroring.
   - **Online help**: provides more detailed online help for additional questions you may have.
   - **Available accessories**: provides information about available accessories.

Internet

The Internet application is your access to the mobile web. This section explains how to navigate the browser and introduces you to the basic features.

To access the browser:

- From the Home screen, tap (**Apps**) ➔ (**Browser**).

Navigating with the Browser

1. To select an item, tap an entry.
2. To scroll through a website, sweep the screen with your finger in an up or down motion.
3. Sweep the screen left to right to move laterally across a web page.
4. To return to a previous page, press .
5. To move forward to a web page, press .

Browser Options

- From any web page, press (**Menu**) to access your browser options.

Entering a URL

You can access a website quickly by entering the URL. Websites are optimized for viewing on your phone.

To enter a URL and go to a particular website:

- From the homepage tap the **URL** field at the top of the screen, enter the URL and tap .

Search the Internet

To perform an Internet search using keywords:

1. From within the Google search application, tap the **Google** search field, enter the keyword(s) to search using the on-screen keypad.
2. Tap the entry from the list of search results that are displayed.
3. Tap a link to view the website.

Adding and Deleting Windows

To add a new window:

1. From your browser window, tap (**Window**) ➔ (**New window**).
2. A new browser window displays.

Note: The number of currently open windows is displayed at the bottom of the Windows screen.

3. Scroll across the screen to view the currently active windows and tap an entry to launch the selected Internet window.

To delete an existing window:

1. From your browser window, tap (**Windows**).
2. Scroll across the available windows and locate your target window.
3. Tap at the top right corner of the web page thumbnail to delete the window.

Going Incognito

The incognito feature allows you to view Internet sites outside of normal browsing. Pages viewed in this incognito window won't appear within your browser history or search history, and no traces (such as cookies) are left on your device.

Note: Any downloaded files will be preserved and will stay on your device after you exit the incognito mode.

To add a new incognito window:

1. From your browser, press (**Menu**) ➔ **Incognito mode**.
2. At the information prompt, tap **OK**.
3. A new browser window displays.

To exit from the incognito window:

1. From your browser window, tap (**Windows**).
2. Scroll across the available windows and locate the incognito window. The incognito icon appears in the upper-left of the new browser window while you are in this mode.

3. Tap next to the incognito listing to delete this window.

Using Bookmarks

While navigating a website, you can bookmark a site to quickly and easily access it at a future time. The URLs (website addresses) of the bookmarked sites are displayed in the Bookmarks page. From the Bookmarks page you can also view your Most visited websites and view your History.

1. From the Home webpage, tap (**Bookmarks**).
   The Bookmarks page is displayed.
2. Press (**Menu**) to display the Bookmark options.

Local

Local is an application that uses Google Maps and your location to help you find Restaurants, Cafes, Bars, Attractions, and other businesses. You can also add your own locations.

1. From the Home screen, tap (**Apps**) ➔ (**Local**).
2. Tap on one of the business categories to search for a particular business.
   All of the business categories that are close to you will be displayed.
3. Tap on a business that you want to see the details for.
4. The business details such as address, phone, website, and location are displayed. You can also see reviews from around the web and from Google users.

Maps

Depending on your location, you can view basic, custom, and satellite maps and local business information, including locations, contact information, and driving directions. You can also post public messages about a location and track your friends.

Important! Before using Google Maps you must have an active data (3G/4G/LTE) or Wi-Fi connection. The Maps application does not cover every country or city.

Enabling a Location Source

Before you use Google Maps and find your location or search for places of interest, you must enable a location source. To enable the location source you must enable the wireless network, or enable the GPS satellites.

1. From the Home screen, tap (**Apps**) ➔ **Settings** ➔ (**More** tab) ➔ **Location services**.
2. Tap **Use GPS satellites** to enable the GPS satellite.

Note: Selecting **Use GPS satellites** allows you to locate places of interest at the street-level. However, this also requires a clear view of the sky and uses more battery power.

3. Tap **Use wireless networks** to allow apps to use data from sources such as Wi-Fi and mobile networks to provide a better approximation of your current location.
4. Tap **My places** to enable the storage of your favorite locations.

To receive better GPS signals, avoid using your device in the following conditions:

- inside a building or between buildings
- in a tunnel or underground passage
- in poor weather
- around high-voltage or electromagnetic fields
- in a vehicle with tinted windows

Using Maps

1. From the Home screen, tap (**Apps**) ➔ (**Maps**). A map will display with your location in the very center.
2. Follow the on-screen instructions to use the Maps application.

Messaging

This application allows you to use the Short Message Service (SMS) to send and receive short text messages to and from other mobile phones.

You can also use the Multi Media Service (MMS) to create multimedia messages to send and receive from other mobile phones.

You can send and receive different types of messages. For more information, refer to *"Messaging"* on page 81.

Messenger

Messenger allows you to bring groups of friends together into a simple group conversation. When you get a new conversation in Messenger, Google+ sends an update to your device.

Note: When this application is accessed, Hangouts is displayed.

1. Sign on to your Google account.
2. From the Home screen, tap (**Apps**) ➔ (**Messenger**).

   – or –

   From the Google+ application, select **Messenger**.
3. Select the account you want to use to sign in to Google+.

   – or –

   Tap **Add account** to create another account.
4. When prompted, follow the on-screen procedures to configure the Sync contacts parameters.

5. When prompted, configure the photo backup parameters as desired and tap **Done**.
6. Tap from the upper-left of the screen and select from an available list of features such as: Home, People, Communities, Hangouts, etc..

To create a new message:

1. Tap from the upper-left of the screen and select **Hangouts**.
2. Select an entry/contact and tap **Message** to start a new message.
3. In the bottom **Send a message** field, enter a message then tap (**Send**).

MetroZONE

Enjoy all of your available updates in a single place. MetroZONE recommends content, information, and applications within a single location.

1. From the Home screen, tap (**Apps**) ➔ (**metroZONE**). The service connects to the network.
2. Follow the on-screen instructions.

Mobile Hotspot

Provides access to the Mobile HotSpot menu where you can use either the USB tethering or portable HotSpot functionality.

1. From the Home screen, tap (**Apps**) ➔ (**Mobile Hotspot**).
2. Activate the desired connection method.

For more information, refer to *“Mobile Hotspot”* on page 171.

Music

Music is an application that can play music files. Music supports files with extensions AAC, AAC+, eAAC+, MP3, WMA, 3GP, MP4, and M4A. Launching Music allows you to navigate through your music library, play songs, and create playlists (music files bigger than 300 KB are displayed).

Playing Music

1. From the Home screen, tap (**Apps**) ➔ (**Music**).
2. Tap a library category at the top of the screen (Songs, Playlists, Albums, Artists, Music square, or Folders) to view the available music files.
3. Scroll through the list of songs and tap an entry to begin playback.
4. The following Music controls are available:

Pause the song.

Start the song after pausing.

Press and hold to rewind the song. Tap to go to previous song.

Press and hold to fast-forward the song. Tap to go to next song.

Volume control and sound effects.

Volume control showing volume muted.

Plays the entire song list once.

Replays the current list when the list ends.

Repeats the currently playing song.

Shuffles the current list of songs randomly.

Songs play in order and are not shuffled.

Lists the current playlist songs.

Displays the current song in the player window.

Assign the current song as a Favorite.

Streams the current music file to another device via Samsung Link.

5. Press (**Menu**) ➔ **Settings** to modify your Music settings.
6. Press (**Menu**) to access additional options.

Creating a Playlist

Playlists are used to assign songs to a list of preferred media which can then be grouped into a list for later playback. These Playlists can be created via either the handset's Music options menu or from within a 3rd party music application (such as Windows Media Player) and then downloaded to the handset.

1. From the Home screen, tap (**Apps**) ➔ (**Music**).
2. Tap the **Playlists** tab.
3. Press (**Menu**) ➔ **Create playlist**.
4. Type a name for this playlist in the field and tap **OK**.

Adding Music to a Playlist

To add files to the playlist:

1. From the Home screen, tap (**Apps**) ➔ (**Music**).
2. Tap the **Playlists** tab.
3. Tap the playlist name in which to add music.
4. Tap (**Add music**).
5. Tap a music file, or tap **Select all** to add all the music tracks to this playlist then tap **OK**.

Removing Music from a Playlist

To remove music files from a playlist:

1. From the Home screen, tap (**Apps**) ➔ (**Music**).
2. Tap the **Playlists** tab.
3. Tap the playlist name in which to delete music.
4. Press (**Menu**) ➔ **Remove**.
5. Tap the checkbox to the left of each track you want to remove from this playlist, or tap **Select all** to remove all the music tracks from this playlist, then tap **Remove**.

Editing a Playlist

Besides adding and removing music files in a playlist, you can also rename the playlist.

To edit a playlist:

1. From the Home screen, tap (**Apps**) ➔ (**Music**).
2. Tap **Playlists**.
3. Press (**Menu**) ➔ **Edit title**.
4. Tap a playlist name to edit.
5. Enter a new name for the playlist then tap **OK**.

For information on downloading music for your phone, see *"Play Music"* on page 137.

My Files

My Files allows you to manage your sounds, images, videos, bluetooth files, Android files, and other memory card data in one convenient location.

1. From the Home screen, tap (**Apps**) ➔ (**My Files**) ➔ **All files**.
2. Tap **Device storage** to see the contents of your internal SD card.
3. The following folders may display:
   - **Alarms**: this folder contains any alarm files you may have.
   - **Android**: the Android folder stores files that are used in Android applications.
   - **Application**: this folder contains app info for S Memo.
   - **Bluetooth**: this folder stores files sent via a Bluetooth device.
   - **DCIM**: this is the default location for pictures and videos taken by the device. Tap **DCIM ➔ Camera** to view the picture or video files. For more information, refer to *"Viewing Pictures"* on page 104. Also, see *"Viewing Videos"* on page 104.
   - **Download**: this folder contains downloads you have made.
   - **Movies**: this folder contains your Video and Movie files.
   - **Music**: this folder contains your Music files.
   - **Notifications**: this folder contains all of the notifications you have received.
   - **Pictures**: this folder contains your photos.
   - **Podcasts**: this folder contains all of your podcasts.
   - **Ringtones**: this folder contains any ringtones you have purchased.
   - **S Memo**: this folder contains all the S Memos you have written.

Note: Different folders may appear depending on how your phone is configured.

4. If you have an external SD card inserted, tap **SD memory card** to see the contents of your external SD card (memory card).

myMetro

Use myMetro to view your account balance, make payments, view your rate plan and features, and access your account settings.

Note: Wi-Fi connection must be disabled prior to use, this application requires use of a mobile network connection.

1. From the Home screen, tap (**Apps**) ➔ (**myMetro**).
2. Tap (**Options**) to choose from one of the following options:
   - **BILL & PAYMENTS**: allows you to pay your bill, add funds to your MetroConnect (MC) account, create an eWallet, or read explanations about billing and payments.
   - **RATE PLAN & FEATURES**: allows you to reset your voicemail password, and alter your E911 Address.
   - **TOOLS**: provides available metro tools for customer use.

Navigation

Navigation is an internet-connected GPS navigation system with voice guidance. You can type or speak your destination.

Note: For voice-guided navigation, you need to install text-to-speech support from the Play Store.

To receive better GPS signals, avoid using your device in the following conditions:

- inside a building or between buildings
- in a tunnel or underground passage
- in poor weather
- around high-voltage or electromagnetic fields
- in a vehicle with tinted windows

Launching Navigation

1. From the Home screen, tap (**Apps**) ➔ (**Navigation**).
2. If prompted, read the Navigation information page and tap **Accept** to continue or **Don't accept** to exit.
3. Select a method of transportation (such as by car, Metro, Bicycle, or Walking).

4. Enter a destination and follow the on-screen instructions to refine your directions.

Phone

The Phone application allows you to access the dialer keypad, call logs, and favorites. For more information, refer to *"Call Functions"* on page 49.

Play Books

With Google Play Books, you can find more than 3 million free e-books and hundreds of thousands more to buy in the eBookstore.

1. From the Home screen, tap (**Apps**) ➔ (**Play Books**).
2. Log on to your Google account. For more information, refer to *"Creating a New Google Account"* on page 15.
3. Follow the on-screen instructions for using the Play Books application.

Play Games

This application takes you directly to the Play Store Games area from where you can make purchases.

1. From the Home screen, tap (**Apps**) ➔ (**Play Games**).
2. Accept the Mobile terms of service for Google+ by tapping **Accept**.
3. Select from an available on-screen option.

Play Magazines

With Google Play Magazines, you can subscribe to your favorite magazines and have them available to read on your phone at any time or any place.

1. From the Home screen, tap (**Apps**) ➔ (**Play Magazines**).
2. Log on to your Google account if you have not already done so. For more information, refer to *"Creating a New Google Account"* on page 15.
3. At the Welcome! display, tap the shop icon to browse the full catalog.
4. Read the Google Play Terms of Service and tap **Accept**.

5. Sweep the screen to the left or right to view Categories, Featured, Top Selling, and New Arrivals.
6. Tap a magazine to see more information and subscribe.
7. Follow the on-screen instructions to subscribe to a magazine.

Play Movies & TV

With Google Play Movies & TV, you can rent thousands of different movies and television shows. You can watch instantly, or download your movie or show for offline viewing at a later time.

1. From the Home screen, tap (**Apps**) ➔ (**Play Movies & TV**).
2. Log on to your Google account if you have not already done so. A list of videos sorted on the SD card displays in the Video list.
3. Following the on-screen instructions for renting and viewing movies.
4. Tap the **My Movies** tab to view movies you have rented.
5. Tap the **My TV Shows** tab to view shows you have rented.
6. Tap the **Shop** tab to access the shopping marketplace.
7. Press (**Menu**) for additional options.

Play Music

With Google Play Music, you can play music that you have added to your music file as well as any music you copied from your PC. While offline, you can listen to music you have copied from your PC.

1. From the Home screen, tap (**Apps**) ➔ (**Play Music**).

   The Music app searches both your online library and your device's internal storage for music and playlists; this can take from a few seconds to several minutes, depending on the amount of new music added since you last opened the application.
2. If prompted to join the service, select either **Not now** or **Try it FREE**.
3. Follow the on-screen log in screens.
4. Return to the Library screen from most other screens in the Music application by tapping the Music application icon (**Music notification icon**) at the top-left of the Application bar.

Searching for Music in Your Library

1. From within the **Play Music** application, tap (**Search**) to search through your available songs.
2. Type the name of an artist, album, song, or playlist. Matching songs are displayed in a list below the search box.
3. Tap a matching song to play it, tap a matching album, artist or playlist to view a list of its' songs.

Tab Options

There are various options available from the various tabs:

- From within the **My Library** area, select one of the following tabs and tap (alongside the entry name) to access an available option.
  - **GENRES:** Add to queue.
  - **ARTISTS:** Start instant mix or Shop for artist.
  - **ALBUMS:** Start instant mix, Add to queue, Keep on device, Add to playlist, Go to artist, or Shop this artist.
  - **SONGS:** Start instant mix, Add to queue, Add to playlist, Go to artist, Go to album, Delete, or Shop this artist.

Play Store

Play Store provides access to downloadable applications and games to install on your phone. Play Store also allows you to provide feedback and comments about an application, or flag an application that might be incompatible with your phone.

Before using the Play Store you must have a Google Account. For more information, refer to *"Gmail"* on page 120.

1. From the main Home screen, tap **Play Store** .
2. Sign in to your Google account.
3. The first time you sign in, the Play Store Terms of Service will be displayed. Tap **Accept** to continue or **Decline** to exit.
4. Tap **Apps**, or **Games** to download or purchase games or applications. You can also download updates to existing applications.
5. Follow on the on-screen instructions.

Rhapsody

Provides access to a subscriber-based digital music service that allows you to listen music at any time from anywhere.

1. From the Home screen, tap (**Apps**) ➔ (**Rhapsody**).
2. Follow the on-screen instructions to register or log into an existing account.

S Memo

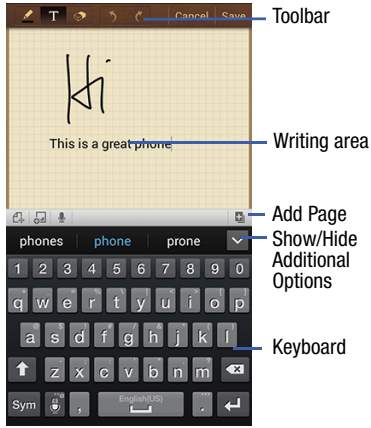
The S Memo application allows you to create memos using the keypad, your finger, or both. You can add images, voice recordings, and text all in one place.

Creating a New Memo

1. From the Home screen, tap (**Apps**) ➔ (**S Memo**).
2. Tap an existing Memo to open it then tap the screen to enter edit mode.

   – or –

   Tap to start a new memo in text mode with the keypad displayed or tap to start a new memo in drawing mode using your finger or a compatible on-screen writing tool. You can change back and forth in a memo to add text with the pen.



The icons that you see displayed on the screen are described in the following table:

Changes the view mode.

Changes to the edit mode.

Allows you to draw with a stylus or your finger. Tap again to access the Pen settings.

Displays the keypad to you can add text.

Eraser tool allows you to erase marks and drawings.

Undo the last action.

Redo the last action that was undone.

Make a voice recording to add to the memo. This option is not available in free-format drawing mode.

Hide the additional text options.

Show the additional text options.

Provides access to a quick selection bar. Choose from: Take picture, Images, Clipboard, Maps, and Clip art. These elements can be used within the memo.

Add an additional page to the memo.

3. When you are finished creating your memo, tap **Save** on the top menu bar.
4. Press (**Menu**) to access additional options.

S Translator

With the S Translator you can easily translate words and phrases into many different languages.

1. Sign in with your Samsung Account if you have not already done so. For more information, refer to *"Creating a Samsung Account"* on page 14.
2. From the Home screen, tap **Apps** (**Apps**) ➔ **S Translator** (**S Translator**).
3. At the S Translator screen, tap the top language bar and enter your language.
4. Tap the language bar at the bottom of the screen to select the language that you would like to translate to.
5. Enter text into the upper box and tap .

   It will be translated into the language of the upper box.

   – or –

   Enter text into the lower box and tap .

   It will be translated into the language of the lower box.
6. Tap either of the **Speak** buttons at the bottom of the screen to translate using either language by using your voice. The translation will appear automatically in the appropriate box.
7. Press (**Menu**) for additional options.

S Voice

With the S Voice application you can use your voice to perform operations that you would normally have to do by hand such as dialing a phone number, texting a message, playing music, etc.

1. From the Home screen, tap **Apps** (**Apps**) ➔ **S Voice** (**S Voice**).
2. Read the Samsung Disclaimer then tap **Confirm** to continue.
3. Read the Vlingo Terms of Service then tap **Agree** to continue.
4. Read the information on the **About S Voice** screen, then tap **Next**.
5. Read the information on the **Say what you want** screen, then tap **Next**.

6. Read the information on the **Wake up S Voice** screen, then tap **Next**.
7. Read the information on the **Edit what you said** screen, then tap **Next**.
8. Read the information on the **Help** screen, then tap **Finish**.
9. At the S Voice screen, tap or say “Hi Galaxy” to wake up S voice.
10. Speak into the phone and follow the on-screen instructions.

Example 1:

- I want to find the best pizza online.
- Tap and say “Find me the best Pizza”. This launches an Internet search.

Example 2:

- I want to go to Cambridge.
- Tap and say “Navigate to Cambridge”. This launches the Map application and indicates where this is in relation to your current position.

11. Press (**Menu**) for additional options.

Samsung Apps

With Samsung Apps, you can download hundred of applications from a variety of categories.

1. Sign on to your Samsung account if you have not already done so.
2. From the Home screen, tap (**Apps**) ➔ (**Samsung Apps**).
3. If prompted, read the Disclaimer, Terms and conditions, and Privacy policy and tap **Accept**.
4. Follow the on-screen instructions.
5. Press (**Menu**) ➔ **Help** for additional information.

Samsung Hub

Samsung Hub makes it easy to find, sample, and purchase movies, TV shows, books, games, and music, in one user-friendly location. With hundreds of titles available, entertaining your family on-the-go has never been easier. You can rent or purchase your favorite content and watch from any location. Samsung Hub is your gateway to mobile entertainment.

You must have an active Samsung Account to purchase and rent content via Samsung Hub.

Note: Samsung Hub usage is based on service availability.

Important! You must be using an active Wi-Fi/4G/LTE connection to preview and download a media file. The internal memory acts as a storage location for your downloaded rental or purchase.

Important! The Samsung account manages the access information (username/password) to several applications, such as Samsung Link, Chat On, and Samsung Hub.

Creating a New Samsung Hub Account

Before you can rent or buy media, you must first create an account. Enter the required information.

1. Log in to your Samsung account if you have not already done so.
2. From the Home screen, tap (**Apps**) ➔ (**Samsung Hub**).
3. When prompted to connect via mobile networks, select either **Cancel** or **Connect**.
4. If notified your Samsung account is not yet active or verified, tap **OK**. You must be signed in to your Samsung account to use the application's various features.

Tip: In some cases it might be necessary to sign in to your Samsung account via the application. Press and then select **Sign in**.

5. Press (**Menu**) ➔ **Help** for additional information.

Using Samsung Hub

The main Samsung Hub screen provides an overview of all the available categories on one page such as: Music, Video, Books, and Games. The overview page also displays recently added media that you can rent or purchase.

1. From the Home screen, tap (**Apps**) ➔ (**Samsung Hub**).
   - The **OVERVIEW** screen (landing page) displays an main access for all available categories and recently available content for purchase or rental.
2. Scroll across the screen to select from the following available pages:
   - **MUSIC**: displays featured Music content available for purchase/stream from the Music store & Radio. This page also allows you to search for new content, or navigate directly to the Music store page by clicking on the "Music" link at the top of the page.
   - **VIDEO**: displays featured film and TV content available for purchase/rent from the video store. This page also allows you to search for new content, or navigate directly to the Movie & TV store page by clicking the "Video" link a the top of the page.
   - **BOOKS**: displays featured Book content available for purchase from the Book store. This page also allows you to search for new content, or navigate directly to the Book store page by clicking the "Books" link a the top of the page.
   - **GAMES**: displays featured Game content available from the Game store. This page also allows you to search for new content, or navigate directly to the Game store page by clicking the "Games" link a the top of the page.
3. To purchase or view featured content in more detail, tap on any content (Thumbnail or text) to navigate to the product detail page.
4. Depending on the content, you can either purchase, rent, or stream the content directly from the product detail page.
5. Choose a payment method, then follow the on-screen instructions.

Samsung Hub Notices

- Any media item (Media Content) may be rented or purchased after you create an account in Samsung Hub.
- Media Content that is purchased and downloaded may be viewed concurrently on up to five (5) devices with Samsung Hub (or "the service") that are also registered to the same account.
- You may remove a device from your account no more than once every 90 days.
- You may remove Media Content from a device as many times as you'd like. You will have the ability to re-download the Media Content later subject to content re-download availability and content provider permissions.
- You may need network coverage to access Media Content you have acquired through the Service.
- You can use 3G, 4G, or Wi-Fi connectivity to download Media Content.
- Unlike purchased Media Content, rented Media Content will be viewable on only 1 device in your account at a time.
- Media Content is downloaded and saved to your authorized device's SD card. No SD Card included out of box.
- Your Media Content may pause/stop or not download in networks where there is a weak signal.
- You may begin watching downloaded Media Content as soon as a) license acquisition has occurred and b) sufficient amount of the Media Content has been buffered.
- You must finish watching Media Content within the time limit set out for each piece of content (which may be as short as 24 consecutive hours).
    - Stopping, pausing or restarting rented Media Content does not extend the available viewing time.
    - In no event will rented Media Content be available for a period of more than thirty (30) days (or shorter on a title-by-title basis) after the Media Content has been rented (e.g., if you begin viewing rented Media Content on the 29th day after the rental transaction, but do not finish viewing the entire title, that rented Media Content may not be available for the entire twenty-four (24) consecutive hour period if such period would extend the viewable time beyond the thirty (30) day rental window).
- Unless otherwise restricted by the Content Providers, you can download Media Content to your TV using HDMI connections; otherwise, you cannot play Media Content downloaded from your mobile device output. (4/1/2013)

Samsung Link

This application wirelessly synchronizes your Samsung mobile phone with your TV, streams content and even keeps tabs on who calls or sends text messages with real-time, on-screen monitoring. Samsung's Samsung Link makes staying connected easy.

Allows users to share their in-device media content with other external devices using DLNA certified™ (Digital Living Network Alliance) Devices. These external devices must also be DLNA-compliant. Wi-Fi capability can be provided to TVs via a digital multimedia streamer.

AllShare/Samsung Link Definitions:

Samsung Link/ AllShare Play	This new feature builds on the previous AllShare Play functionality. It includes features such as Web storage integration and social networking integration. This is a Web service that requires using a Samsung account.
Group Play	A subset feature of Samsung Link, this allows you to mirror photos and multimedia presentations with other members of your current Wi-Fi group. Users must be on the same Wi-Fi and provide an access code to join the group.
AllShare Cast (with Hub accessory)	This feature functions with an external AllShareCast Hub to fully mirror what is currently displayed on your device to the external TV.

Important! You must first connect both of your communicating devices to the same Wi-Fi and be using an active/registered Samsung account prior to using this application.

The Samsung account manages the access information (username/password) to several applications, such as Samsung Link.

Important! You must first connect both of your communicating devices to the same Wi-Fi. For more information, refer to *"Wi-Fi Settings"* on page 176.

1. From the Home screen, tap (**Apps**) ➔ (**Samsung Link**).
2. If prompted with an on-screen notification about no Wi-Fi detected, tap **Cancel** (to continue by using your network connection) or **Connect** to continue.
3. Tap **Sign in**.
4. If prompted to log into your Samsung account, tap **Sign in** and follow the on-screen instructions.

Note: If the main screen still shows a Sign in box, close the application and restart it.

5. Follow the on-screen prompts.
6. Scroll across the application screen to view either MY RECENT CONTENT or DEVICES & STORAGE.The DEVICES & STORAGE list contains two separate streaming media options:
   - **Registered devices** allows you to stream/share selected multimedia content from your device to DLNA compliant device connected to the same Wireless Access Point.
   - **Registered storage**: allows you to receive and playback media stored externally (server, laptop, etc.) directly on your device by allowing you to add a Web storage service for streaming content.

Configuring Samsung Link Settings

The Samsung Link™ application must first be configured prior to its initial use. You must setup parameters such as connected Wi-Fi, Items to share, source server address, and external device acceptance rights.

1. From the Home screen, tap (**Apps**) ➔ (**Samsung Link**) ➔ **DEVICES & STORAGE tab**.
2. Press (**Menu**) and then tap **Settings** and configure the following settings as desired:
   - **Registered storage**: allows you to add a Web storage location. Without a storage service/location added, you will not be able to use Samsung Link.
   - **My device**: allows you to alter the device name.
   - **Save to**: allows you to save your media to your internal phone memory or to an SD card.
   - **Auto upload**: allows you to enable automatic upload of images from your device to those storage locations specified within the Web storage list. Move the slider to the on position to activate the feature.
   - **Video optimization**: allows you to setup the video quality for streamed video content. Move the slider to the on position to activate the feature.
   - **Password lock**: allows you to restrict access to Samsung Link by requiring a user enter the currently active and associated Samsung account password. Move the slider to the on position to activate the feature.
   - **My account**: displays Samsung account information.
   - **Customer support**: displays Customer FAQ information.
   - **About this service**: displays application information.

Setting Up Web Storage

Web storage services allow you to use storage space to store your files and share them on the “Cloud”.

Note: If you are using another Web storage service, log into that service first before using Samsung Link.

1. From the Home screen, tap (**Apps**) ➔ (**Samsung Link**).

Note: When adding storage, an N Drive is added.

2. If not already signed into your Cloud storage, tap (**Register storage**) ➔ **Sign in** to your desired service. Choose from: SugarSync, Dropbox, or SkyDrive.

   – or –

   Presss (**Menu**) and then tap **Settings** ➔ **Registered storage** ➔ (**Register storage**).

3. Follow the on-screen instructions to register or log into your cloud service.
4. Once the process is successfully completed, the Web storage icon or name appears in the Web storage area of the main screen.
5. From the main screen, select a connected device and then tap on the media that you would like to share.
   - A file with N in the upper-left indicates it is stored remotely on a Web storage location. Selecting this media causes your device to access the file currently stored on your services' servers.

To de-register Web storage service:

1. From the Samsung Link application, press (**Menu**) and then tap **Settings** ➔ **Registered storage**.
2. Select **Deregister**.
3. Select a current storage service and tap **OK**.

Sharing Media via Samsung Link to a Target Device

Important! Make sure all communicating devices are connected to the same Wi-Fi.

1. Launch AllShare Play/Samsung Link on the target device (such as an Internet TV, Samsung Tablet, etc.).
2. From the Home screen, tap (**Apps**) ➔ (**Samsung Link**).

Note: You must be signed in to your Samsung Account before you can use this feature.

3. Tap **DEVICES & STORAGE** and select your device name from the **Registered devices** area.
4. Tap an available category tab (Pictures, Music, Video, or Files) and select a file.
   - A file with N in the upper-left indicates it is stored remotely on a Web storage location. Selecting this media causes your device to access the file currently stored on your services' servers.
5. Tap an available on-screen file, image, or video to place a green check mark alongside it.
6. Tap (**Stream to connected devices**) and select an available target device to begin streaming.
7. On a target device (ex: Internet TV) select the on-screen **Allow** button to continue.

Note: At this stage your device is requesting access to share media with the external source.

8. Confirm (**Samsung Link Controller enabled**) appears in the Notification area at the top of the device to indicate you are using your device as the media source.

Settings

This app navigates to the sound and phone settings for your phone. It includes such settings as: display, security, memory, and any extra settings associated with your phone. For more information, refer to *"Changing Your Settings"* on page 175.

Story Album

With Story Album, you can create a digital Album of your story in media. Special moments will be on a timeline, and if you wish, you can have your album published as a hard copy.

1. From the Home screen, tap (**Apps**) ➔ (**Story Album**).
2. Read the introductory information and tap **Next**.
3. Tap **Start** to begin your Story Album.
4. Follow the on-screen instructions.
5. Press (**Menu**) ➔ **Help** for additional information.

TripAdvisor

With the TripAdvisor, you can plan and have your perfect trip. With over 75 million reviews and opinions by travelers, it is easy to find the best hotels, restaurants, and fun things to do.

1. From the Home screen, tap (**Apps**) ➔ (**TripAdvisor**).
2. Sign in with your Samsung Account if you have not already done so.
3. Follow the on-screen instructions to use TripAdvisor.
4. Press (**Menu**) for additional options.

Video

The Video application plays video files stored on your phone or microSD card.

1. From the Home screen, tap (**Apps**) ➔ (**Video**).
   All videos that you have on your phone and memory card will be displayed.
2. Tap the video that you want to play.
   The video will begin to play.
3. The following video controls are available:

	Pause the video.
	Start the video after being paused.
	Press and hold to rewind the video. Tap to go to previous video.
	Press and hold to fast-forward the video. Tap to go to next video.
	Volume control.

PIP (Picture In Picture) view. The video will be played in a small window so you can use your phone for other purposes while watching the video. Double-tap screen to return to previous size.

Original size view. The video will be played in its original size.

Full-screen in ratio view. The video is enlarged as much as possible without becoming distorted.

View mode.

Full-screen view. The entire screen is used, which may cause some minor distortion.

Streams the video to another device via Samsung Link.

Note: The screen view icons are a three-way toggle. The icon that is displayed, is the mode that will appear after the icon is tapped.

4. Press (**Menu**) for additional options.

Sharing Videos

1. From the Home screen, tap (**Apps**) ➔ (**Video**). After a few seconds, each on-screen video begins to cycle through a preview of the first five seconds of the clip.
2. Press (**Menu**) and then tap **Share via**.
3. Select either individual videos or tap **Select all** ➔ **Done** to complete the process or **Cancel** to quit.
4. Select a sharing option. Choose from: Add to Dropbox, Bluetooth, ChatON, Email, Gmail, Google+, Messaging, Picasa, Wi-Fi Direct, or YouTube.

Visual Voicemail

Visual Voicemail enables users to view a list of people who left a voicemail message, and listen to the any message they want without being limited to chronological order.

1. From the Home screen, tap (**Apps**) ➔ (**Visual Voicemail**).
2. Read the on-screen information and tap **Next.**

Note: You must subscribe to the Visual Voicemail service to use this feature. Charges may apply. Please contact your service provider for further details.

---

3. Tap an on-screen voicemail message to play it back.

To check Visual Voicemail messages:

1. From the Home screen, tap (**Apps**) ➔ (**Visual Voicemail**).
2. Tap the voicemail message you want to play.
3. Tap (**Play**).

To delete Visual Voicemail messages:

1. From the Home screen, tap (**Apps**) ➔ (**Visual Voicemail**).
2. Tap the voicemail message you want to delete.
3. Tap (**Delete**) ➔ **OK**.

Voice Recorder

The Voice Recorder allows you to record an audio file up to one minute long and then immediately share it using Wi-Fi Direct, Messaging, Gmail, or via Bluetooth. Recording time will vary based on the available memory within the phone.

1. From the Home screen, tap (**Apps**) ➔ (**Voice Recorder**).
2. To start recording, tap **Record** and speak into the microphone.

3. During the recording process you can either tap **Stop** to stop and save the recording or **Pause** to temporarily halt the recording. After pausing, tap **Record** to resume recording. Once the audio recording has stopped, the message is automatically saved. Tap **Cancel** to cancel the recording without saving.
4. Tap **List** to display a list of all your voice recordings. Tap a voice recording to play it.
5. On the top-right corner of the display, is the recording quality icon. Tap to toggle between Normal and High quality recording.
6. Press (**Menu**) for additional options.

Voice Search

The Google Voice Search application allows you to search the web using only your voice.

1. From the Home screen, tap (**Apps**) ➔ (**Voice Search**).
2. When prompted, speak into the built-in microphone.
   - Use the on-screen options to find a matching search term.

VPN Client

This is a full-featured VPN Client that provides support for the latest IPSec VPN standards and provides interoperability with support for all major VPN Gateways.

1. From the Home screen, tap (**Apps**) ➔ (**VPN Client**).
2. Follow the on-screen instructions to configure the VPN Client.
   - Options include: Add VPN Connection or My VPN Connections.

WatchON

With the WatchON application, you can use your phone as a remote control for your TV.

Important! Before initiating use, verify you have an active Internet connection available (either mobile network or Wi-Fi connection).

Note: Before beginning your initial WatchON application setup, confirm your TV is turned off.

Initial Configuration

1. Sign into your Samsung account.
2. From the Home screen, tap (**Apps**) ➔ (**WatchON**).

Note: If you are not connected to an active Wi-Fi, you may be prompted to continue the set up process via a mobile network. Click **Connect** to proceed.

3. Tap **Select country or region** then choose a country.
4. Enter your current zip code and tap **Done**. This zip code must correspond to the location of your desired TV and set top box.
5. From the **Find your TV service** screen, select a service provider from the available channel listing.
6. From the **Personalize** screen, you can either follow the on-screen prompts to personalize your desired content or tap **Skip** to continue without customizing your content.
7. Read the on-screen Peel agreement and tap **Agree** to complete the set up process.

Customizing Your Remote

1. From the top of the main screen, tap (**Remote Control**) ➔ **Set Up Now**.
2. From the **Select your TV Brand** screen, tap your TV's manufacturer name.
   - If you have a brand of TV not listed or you are using a projector, select from one of the following two options. Choose from either **Show other brands** or **I have a home projector**.
3. Aim your device at the TV and tap (**Power**) to confirm the set up process completed successfully and the correct TV IR codes were selected.

Note: The process of the initial TV activation can take up to 10 seconds. Please do not press the button again.

4. If the TV turned on, tap **Yes**.
   – or –
   If the TV did not turn on after tapping (**Power**) and waiting 10 seconds, tap **No** or **Retry**.
5. From the **Select your channel source** screen, select the entry that corresponds to your current channel control method:
   - **Set-top Box**: selected when changing channels is done via a receiver box. Channels are not changed via the TV remote but rather through the receiver/box.
   - **My xxx TV**: selected when a signal is fed directly into the TV and no box is used. Channels are changed directly on the TV by using the TV remote and not a box's remote.

Note: Try matching your current channel selection method.

6. Select the Satellite Box Brand from the available list.
   - If your brand does not appear in the list, tap **Other Satellite Box Brands** and follow the on-screen instructions.

Important! You must configure your set top box for IR communication with your device. If you do not select **More Info** below and follow the on-screen instructions you may not be able to properly use the application.

7. When prompted to Enable IR, tap **More info** to learn how to configure your set top box to receive and respond to IR controls.
8. Once configured, tap the on-screen Channel button to confirm functionality. Tap an on-screen confirmation option.
9. Only after completing the IR setup process and programming your box, press (**Menu**).

Note: This IR programming of your set top box is a one-time process and once successful should not need to be repeated.

Using WatchON

To change channels:

1. Sign into your Samsung account.
2. From the Home screen, tap (**Apps**) ➔ (**WatchON**).
3. From the top of the main screen, tap (**Remote Control**). This launches an on-screen remote control.
   - **Easy remote**: provides the most common used control features. Scroll down to view additional functions.
4. In a single motion touch and drag up from the bottom-right of the screen to access additional remote tabs Choose from one of the following:
   - **TV**: provides access to control functions specific to your TV.
   - **[Set top box]**: displays customized control specific to your configured set top box. Ex: satellite dish remote control functions.
5. From the remote screen press (**Menu**) and then tap (**Change room**) to choose from different receivers/boxes in different rooms. Ex: Living Room box, Bedroom box, etc.
6. Press (**Menu**) to return to the main menu.

Locating your favorite programming:

1. Sign into your Samsung account.
2. From the Home screen, tap (**Apps**) ➔ (**WatchON**).
3. From the main screen tap (**Combined View**) to reveal available media categories.

4. Select an available category.

   – or –

   Tap **Channel Guide** to display on your TV an on-screen listing of available set top box shows.

5. For additional information on the WatchON application, press (**Menu**) and then select **Help**.

WatchOn Settings

1. From the Home screen, tap (**Apps**) ➔ (**WatchON**).
2. Press (**Menu**) and then select an available on-screen option:
   - **Change room**: allows you to select a previously configured room.
   - **Edit channels**: allows you to add or remove channels from your custom list. Press and hold a channel number to update the channel number.
   - **Settings**: provides access to the Samsung WatchOn settings menu.
   - **About**: displays on-screen information about the application.
   - **Help**: displays on-screen help information.

Personalize WatchON

You can personalize your application to do things such as show content only from your selected media categories, or add an additional room's set top box.

To configure your Just for you settings:

The Just for you option displays available content matching your activated media categories. These categories can be configured during your initial set up or at any later time.

1. Sign into your Samsung account.
2. From the Home screen, tap (**Apps**) ➔ (**WatchON**).
3. From the main screen tap (**Combined View**) ➔ **Just for you**.
4. From the **On TV** tab, press (**Menu**) and then select **Settings**.
5. Access parameters such as **Basic info**, **Genres** and **Sports** to then configure and enable those parameters you would like to show in the Just for you tab.

To add a new room:

Your device can be used to control boxes/receivers from several rooms. You could go from controlling your set top box in your living room and then move into your bedroom to do the same.

1. Sign into your Samsung account.
2. From the Home screen, tap (**Apps**) ➔ (**WatchON**).
3. From the **On TV** tab, press (**Menu**) and then select **Settings** ➔ **Add room**.
4. Name the new room and tap **Next**.
5. Enter your current zip code and tap **Done**. This zip code must correspond to the location of your desired TV and set top box.
6. Follow steps 4-10 starting on page 155 to complete the process.

YouTube

YouTube™ is a video sharing website on which users can upload and share videos. The site is used to display a wide variety of user-generated video content, including movie clips, TV clips, and music videos, as well as video content such as video blogging, informational shorts and other original videos.

Note: YouTube is a data-intensive feature. It is recommended that you upgrade to a large data plan to avoid additional data charges.

1. From the Home screen, tap (**Apps**) ➔ (**YouTube**).
2. At the You Tube introduction screen, tap **OK**.
3. Tap the search field to search for specific videos, scroll down to browse through the main page thumbnails, or scroll to the bottom to explore additional options.
4. To view a video, tap an available preview thumbnail or tap the title link.
5. Press (**Menu**) for additional options.

Note: Preloading YouTube videos will use some of your device's storage space and may result in additional charges if your Wi-Fi plan is not unlimited.

To configure YouTube Settings:

- Press (**Menu**) and then tap **Settings** and configure the following parameters:
  - **General**
    - **High quality on mobile**, when enabled, allows you to start all videos in high quality mode while you are connected to a mobile network.
    - **Caption font size** allows you to set the font size used by on-screen captions. Choose from: Small, Medium, Large, or Huge.
    - **Uploads** specifies network preferences for uploads.
    - **Content localization** allows you to prioritize channels and videos from a specific country or region.
    - **Improve YouTube** allows you to anonymously send YouTube information to help improve the application.
  - **Connected TVs**
    - Allows you to pair your device to a wireless TV running a YouTube application. Options include Add a TV and Edit TVs.
  - **Search**
    - **Clear search history** allows you to clear previous YouTube searches from showing up in the YouTube search box.
    - **Never remember history** allows you to force YouTube to never store search history information.
    - **SafeSearch filtering** allows you to configure block settings for videos containing restricted content. This option blocks these videos from appearing within your search results. Choose from: Don't filter, Moderate, or Strict.
  - **Preloading**
    - **Preload subscriptions** allows you to preload (or go get videos while on Wi-Fi and charging) your subscription videos.
    - **Preload watch later** allows you to enable the preload function on selected videos so you can watch them later. Read the data usage information and tap **OK** to accept the terms.

Note: Preloading YouTube videos will use some of your device's storage space and may result in additional charges if your Wi-Fi plan is not unlimited.

- **About**
  - **Help** provides answers to most YouTube questions.
  - **Feedback** allows you to provide user feedback to YouTube.
  - **Google Mobile Terms of Service**
  - **YouTube Terms of Service**
  - **Google Mobile Privacy Policy**
  - **YouTube Privacy Policy**
  - **Open source licenses**
  - **App version** displays the software version for the current YouTube application.

To watch a high quality video:

- Press (**Menu**) and then tap **Settings** ➔ **General** ➔ **High quality on mobile**.

Section 8: Connections

This section describes the various connections your phone can make including accessing Wi-Fi, Bluetooth, and Connecting your PC.

Wi-Fi

About Wi-Fi

Wi-Fi (short for "wireless fidelity"and sometimes referred to as wifi) is a term used for certain types of Wireless Local Area Networks (WLAN). These device types use an 802.11 wireless specification to transmit and receive wireless data. Wi-Fi communication requires access to an existing and accessible Wireless Access Point (WAP). These WAPs can either be Open (unsecured) as within most Hot Spots, or Secured (requiring knowledge of the Router name and password).

For more information, refer to *"WPS Push Button"* on page 177.

For more information, refer to *"WPS PIN Entry"* on page 178.

Turning Wi-Fi On

By default, your device's Wi-Fi feature is turned off. Turning Wi-Fi on makes your device able to discover and connect to compatible in-range WAPs.

1. From the Home screen, tap (**Apps**) ➔ **Settings** ➔ (**Connections** tab) ➔ **Wi-Fi**.
2. Tap the ON/OFF slider, located to the right of the Wi-Fi field, to turn Wi-Fi ON.

Connect to a Wi-Fi Network

1. From the Home screen, tap (**Apps**) ➔ **Settings** ➔ (**Connections** tab) ➔ **Wi-Fi**.

   The network names and security settings (Open network or Secured with WEP) of detected Wi-Fi networks are displayed in the Wi-Fi networks section.
2. Tap the network you want to connect to.

Note: When you select an open network, you will be automatically connected to the network.

3. Enter a wireless password if necessary.

Manually add your new network connection

1. From the Home screen, tap (**Apps**) ➔ **Settings** ➔ (**Connections** tab) ➔ **Wi-Fi**.
2. Tap **Add Wi-Fi network**.
3. Enter the **Network SSID**. This is the name of your Wireless Access Point.
4. Tap the **Security** field and select a security option. This must match the current security setting on your target WAP.
5. If secured, you will also need to enter your WAP's password.
6. Tap **Show advanced options**, if you need to add advanced options such as Proxy settings, IP settings, or Key management.
7. Tap **Connect** to store the new information and connect to your target WAP.

Note: The next time your device connects to a previously accessed or secured wireless network, you are not prompted to enter the WAP key again, unless you reset your device back to its factory default settings.

Turning Wi-Fi Off

1. From the Home screen, tap (**Apps**) ➔ **Settings** ➔ (**Connections** tab) ➔ **Wi-Fi**.
2. Tap the ON/OFF slider, located to the right of the Wi-Fi field, to turn Wi-Fi OFF OFF.

Note: Use of wireless data connections such as Wi-Fi and Bluetooth can cause an added drain to your battery and reduce your use times.

Manually Scan for a Wi-Fi Network

1. From the Home screen, tap (**Apps**) ➔ **Settings** ➔ (**Connections** tab) ➔ **Wi-Fi**.
2. Tap **Scan**.

   All available Wi-Fi networks are displayed.

Wi-Fi Status Indicators

The following icons show your Wi-Fi connection status at a glance:

Displays when Wi-Fi is connected, active, and communicating with a Wireless Access Point (WAP).

Displays when there is a Wi-Fi access point available but you are not connected to it. May also display if there is a communication issue with the target Wireless Access Point (WAP).

Displays when connected to another device using Wi-Fi Direct. For more information, refer to *"Wi-Fi Direct"* on page 165.

Wi-Fi Advanced Settings

The Advanced Wi-Fi menu allows you to set up many of your device's advanced Wi-Fi services.

1. From the Home screen, tap (**Apps**) ➔ **Settings** ➔ (**Connections** tab) ➔ **Wi-Fi**.
2. Press (**Menu**) ➔ **Advanced**.

   The following options are available:

   - **Network notification**: alerts you when a new WAP is available.
   - **Passpoint**: allows you to connect to passpoint-enabled Wi-Fi Access Points automatically. Touch and slide the slider to the right to turn it on .
   - **Keep Wi-Fi on during sleep**: allows you to specify when to disconnect from Wi-Fi.
   - **Auto network switch**: allows you to be automatically connected to an Wi-Fi Hotspot as soon as your phone detects it.
   - **MAC address**: view your device's MAC address, required when connecting to some secured networks (not configurable).
   - **IP address**: view your device's IP address.

Wi-Fi Direct

Wi-Fi Direct allows device-to-device connections so you can transfer large amounts of data over a Wi-Fi connection.

Note: See your service plan for applicable charges for Wi-Fi Direct.

1. From the Home screen, tap (**Apps**) ➔ **Settings** ➔ (**Connections** tab) ➔ **Wi-Fi**.
2. Tap the ON/OFF slider, located to the right of the Wi-Fi field, to turn Wi-Fi ON .
3. At the bottom of the Wi-Fi screen, tap the **Wi-Fi Direct** button.
4. Repeat **steps 1 - 3** on the other device you want to connect with. The steps on a different model of phone, may be different.
5. On your phone, tap **Scan**.

   The device scans for other Wi-Fi Direct devices.
6. Once the device you want to connect to is displayed, tap on it.
7. The other device has 2 minutes to tap **Accept** for the connection to be made.
8. Once connected, the other device will show as **Connected** in your list of Wi-Fi Direct devices and the icon will display at the top of your screen.
9. For additional information about Wi-Fi Direct, press (**Menu**) ➔ **Help**.

Sharing Information with Connected Device

To share Videos, Photos, or other information with the connected device:

1. View the information that you want to share. For example, if you want to share a photo, find the photo in your camera viewer or **My Files** folder, then tap the **Share, Share via,** or **Send via** option.
2. Tap the **Wi-Fi Direct** option.
3. Tap the connected device name. For example, Android_XXX.
4. Tap **Done**.
5. The file is transferred and the other device will receive a screen notification that a Wi-Fi file has been received. The file can be found in **My Files** ➔ **All files** ➔ **Device storage** in the **ShareViaWifi** folder.

Note: Depending on the other device model, the prompts and shared folder information may differ.

NFC

NFC (Near Field Communication) allows data exchange when you touch your device with another compatible device. This is used for applications such as S Beam and Android Beam. To activate NFC on your device, see *"NFC"* on page 188.

Bluetooth

About Bluetooth

Bluetooth is a short-range communications technology that allows you to connect wirelessly to a number of Bluetooth devices, such as headsets and hands-free car kits, and Bluetooth-enabled handhelds, computers, printers, and wireless devices. The Bluetooth communication range is usually up to approximately 30 feet.

Turning Bluetooth On and Off

To turn Bluetooth on:

1. From the Home screen, tap (**Apps**) ➔ **Settings** ➔ Connections (**Connections** tab).
2. Tap the ON/OFF slider, located to the right of the Bluetooth field, to turn Bluetooth ON ON. When active, appears within the Status area.

To turn Bluetooth off:

1. From the Home screen, tap (**Apps**) ➔ **Settings** ➔ Connections (**Connections** tab).
2. Tap the ON/OFF slider, located to the right of the Bluetooth field, to turn Bluetooth OFF OFF.

Bluetooth Status Indicators

The following icons show your Bluetooth connection status at a glance:

Displays when Bluetooth is active.

Displays when Bluetooth is connected (paired) and communicating.

Bluetooth Settings

The Bluetooth settings menu allows you to set up many of the characteristics of your device's Bluetooth service, including:

- Entering or changing the name your device uses for Bluetooth communication and description
- Setting your device's visibility (or "discoverability") for other Bluetooth devices

To access the Bluetooth Settings menu:

1. From the Home screen, tap (**Apps**) ➔ **Settings** ➔

(**Connections** tab).
2. Verify your Bluetooth is ON

.
3. Tap **Bluetooth**.

To change your Bluetooth name:

1. From the Home screen, tap (**Apps**) ➔ **Settings** ➔

(**More** tab) ➔ **About device** ➔ **Device name**.
2. Use the keyboard to modify your device name and tap **OK**.

To make your device visible:

1. From the Bluetooth settings page, press (**Menu**) ➔ **Visibility timeout**.
   - Making your device visible allows it to be detected by other devices for pairing and communication.
2. Select a time that you would like your device visibility to time-out.

To show received files:

- From the Bluetooth settings page, press (**Menu**) ➔ **Received files**.

  A list of all files received from Bluetooth is displayed.

To scan for Bluetooth devices:

1. Verify your Bluetooth is active.
2. From the Bluetooth settings page, tap **Scan** to search for visible external Bluetooth-compatible devices such as headsets, devices, printers, and computers.

Pairing Bluetooth Devices

The Bluetooth pairing process allows you to establish trusted connections between your device and another Bluetooth device. When you pair devices, they share a passkey, allowing for fast, secure connections while bypassing the discovery and authentication process.

To pair your device with another Bluetooth device:

1. Verify your Bluetooth is active.
2. Tap **Scan**. Your device will display a list of discovered in-range Bluetooth devices.
3. Tap a device from the list to initiate pairing.
4. Enter the passkey or PIN code, if needed, and tap **OK**.
5. The external device will then have to also accept the connection and enter your device's PIN code.

   Once successfully paired to an external device, appears within the Status area.

Note: Due to different specifications and features of other Bluetooth-compatible devices, display and operations may be different, and functions such as transfer or exchange may not be possible with all Bluetooth compatible devices.

Note: Pairing between two Bluetooth devices is a one-time process. Once a pairing has been created, the devices will continue to recognize their partnership and exchange information without having to re-enter a passcode again.

Disconnecting a paired device

Disconnecting a paired device breaks the connection between the device and your phone, but retains the knowledge of the pairing. At a later point when you wish to reconnect the device, there is no need to setup the connection information again.

1. Verify your Bluetooth is active.
2. From the Bluetooth settings page, tap the previously paired device (from the bottom of the page).
3. Tap **OK** to confirm disconnection.

Note: Disconnections are manually done but often occur automatically if the paired device goes out of range of your phone or it is powered off.

Deleting a paired device (unpair)

Deleting a device from your list removes its "connection record" and upon reconnection would require that you re-enter all the previous pairing information.

1. Verify your Bluetooth is active.
2. From the Bluetooth settings page, tap next to the previously paired device. This opens the connected device's menu options.
3. Tap **Unpair** to delete the paired device.
4. Tap **Rename** to change the name of the paired device.
5. Tap **Call audio** to enable or disable call audio from the paired device.
6. Tap **Media audio** to enable or disable media audio from the paired device.

Sending Contacts via Bluetooth

Depending on your paired devices' settings and capabilities, you may be able to send pictures, Contact information, or other items using a Bluetooth connection.

Note: Prior to using this feature, Bluetooth must first be enabled, and the recipient's device must be visible.

1. Verify your Bluetooth is active.
2. From the Home screen, tap (**Contacts**).
3. Press (**Menu**) ➔ **Share namecard via**.
4. Tap each contact that you would like to send via Bluetooth. A green checkmark will appear next to each entry you select.
5. Tap **Done**.
6. Tap **Bluetooth**.
7. Select the paired device to send the contacts to.

Note: The external Bluetooth device must be visible and communicating for the pairing to be successful.

8. A Bluetooth share notification will appear in your notifications list.

PC Connections

You can connect your device to a PC using your PC data cable using various USB connection modes.

Storage: allows you to use the onboard storage capacity of the phone to store and upload files. This option allows your computer to detect the phone as a removable storage drive.

Kies: allows you to manage music, movies and photos. You can also backup precious contacts and calendars, download apps and podcasts and automatically upgrade device firmware. Kies conveniently syncs your life across all your devices.

Note: To sync your device to your PC, it is highly recommended that you install Samsung Kies which is available at http://www.samsung.com/kies (for Windows/ Mac).

Note: If you are a Windows XP user, ensure that you have Windows XP Service Pack 3 or higher installed on your computer. Also, ensure that you have Samsung Kies 2.0 or Windows Media Player 10 or higher installed on your computer.

Connecting as a Storage Device

You can connect your device to a PC as a removable disk and access the file directory. If you insert a memory card in the device, you can also access the files directory from the memory card by using the device as a memory card reader.

Note: The file directory of the memory card displays as a removable disk, separate from the internal memory.

1. Connect the USB cable to the device and connect the cable to the computer. After a few seconds, a pop-up window displays on the PC when connected.
2. On the PC pop-up, click **Open device to view files**.
3. Copy files from the PC to the memory card.

Mobile Hotspot

This feature allows you to turn your device into a Wi-Fi Hotspot. The feature works best when used in conjunction with 4G/LTE data services (although 3G service can also be used).

The Mobile Hotspot connectivity is a wireless version of this same functionality and allows you to provide Internet connectivity to multiple devices.

Important! The Mobile Hotspot service can not be active at the same time as Wi-Fi. Please close your Wi-Fi connection prior to launching this service.

Note: You must have a tethering plan on your account in order to use the Mobile Hotspot. You cannot use data on the device while using Mobile Hotspot.

To activate the Mobile Hotspot service:

1. From the Home screen, tap (**Apps**) ➔ **Settings** ➔ (**Connections** tab) ➔ **More networks** ➔ **Tethering and Mobile Hotspot**.
2. In a single motion touch and slide the **Mobile Hotspot** slider to the right to turn it on.
3. Edit the **Network SSID** name and then write it down.
4. Enable the **Broadcast network name (SSID)** field if you would like to broadcast your SSID name to nearby devices.
5. Verify the **Security** field is set to **WPA2 PSK**.
6. Enter a new password then write it down.
   – Additional options include Show password and Show advanced options.
7. Tap **Save** to store the new settings.
8. Confirm the Mobile HotSpot active icon appears at the top of the screen.

Note: By default, prior to the initial setup process, the connection is unsecure. It is recommended you create your own password prior to your initial connection.

Note: The Mobile Hotspot drains your device's battery at a much faster rate than when using any other feature combination. The best way to keep using the device as a Hotspot is to have it connected to a power supply.

To connect to the Mobile Hotspot:

1. Enable Wi-Fi (wireless) functionality on your target device (laptop, media device, etc.).
2. Scan for Wi-Fi networks from the external device and select your device's Mobile Hotspot name from the network list.
   - The SSID name for your device's hotspot is determined by what you entered into the **Network SSID** field.
   - You can change the name by tapping **Configure** ➔ **Network SSID** and changing the entry.
3. Select this Hotspot and follow your on-screen instructions to complete the connection.
4. Launch your Web browser to confirm you have an Internet connection.

To change the Mobile Hotspot password:

1. From the Home screen, tap (**Apps**) ➔ **Settings** ➔ (**Connections** tab) ➔ **More networks** ➔ **Tethering and Mobile Hotspot**.
2. Tap the **Mobile Hotspot** field and then select **Configure.**
3. Tap the **Security** field and select **WPA2 PSK**.
4. With security enabled, delete the previous password and enter a new one into the **Password** field.

Important! The more complex the password, the harder it will be for intruders to break your security. It is recommended that you not use names, birthdays, or other personal information.

5. Tap **Save** to store the new settings.

To manage connected devices:

This feature allows you to provide MAC filtering on your device. This is similar to a “VIP list” where only device on the list are allowed access.

1. From the Home screen, tap (**Apps**) ➔ (**Mobile Hotspot**).
2. Tap **Allowed devices**.
3. Tap (**Add new device**) to add devices to the allowed for connection list.
4. Enter the Device name and Mac address.
5. Tap **OK** to save the new device.

USB Tethering

This option allows you to share your device’s mobile data connection via a direct USB connection between your device and a single computer. The Mobile HotSpot connectivity is a wireless version of this same functionality and allows you to provide Internet connectivity to multiple devices.

Note: You can not mount your device’s microSD card to your computer while using the USB tethering feature. If additional software or USB drivers are required, navigate to: http://www.samsung.com/us/support/downloads.

To connect using USB Tethering:

1. From the Home screen, tap (**Apps**) ➔ **Settings** ➔ (**Connections** tab) ➔ **More networks** ➔ **Tethering and Mobile Hotspot**.
2. Plug in the USB cable between your computer and your device.
3. Tap **USB tethering** from the Tethering menu. This places a green check mark next to the entry and activates the feature. A Tethering or HotSpot active notification briefly appears on the screen.
   Look for the Tethering active icon in the Status bar area of the screen.
4. Read the on-screen notification regarding data use and tap **OK**.

To disconnect tethering:

1. From the Home screen, tap (**Apps**) ➔ **Settings** ➔ (**Connections** tab) ➔ **More networks** ➔ **Tethering and Mobile Hotspot**.
2. Tap **USB tethering** from the Tethering menu to remove the check mark and deactivate the feature.
3. Remove the USB cable from the device.

Section 9: Changing Your Settings

This section explains the settings used for customizing your device.

Accessing Settings

- From any Home screen, tap (**Apps**) ➔ (**Settings**).

  – or –

  From any Home screen, press (**Menu**) ➔ **Settings**.

Settings Tabs

The Settings are divided into 4 main groups. When the Settings screen displays, the following 4 tabs are located at the top of the screen:

Connections:

This tab allows you to see all of settings related to the connection of your device to external sources. Features include: Wi-Fi, Bluetooth, Data usage, More networks (Airplane mode, Mobile networks, Tethering and Mobile Hotspot, VPN, and Wi-Fi Calling), NFC, S Beam, Nearby devices, Screen Mirroring, and Kies via Wi-Fi.

My device:

This tab provides access to device configuration and customization features. Features include: Lock screen, Display, LED indicator, Sound, Home screen mode, Call, Blocking mode, Driving mode, Power saving mode, Accessory, Accessibility, One-handed operation, Language and input, Motions and gestures, Smart screen, Air view, and Voice control.

Accounts:

This tab provides both the ability to create and modify your accounts (example; Samsung account, Email, Google account, etc.), Cloud, and access Backup and reset features.

More:

This tab provides access to the remaining set of device settings not listed under the other three tabs. These include Location services, Security, Application manager, Battery, Storage, Date and time, and About device.

Note: The settings for your device are described below in the order that they appear within the Settings menu. Options under the Connections tab are listed first, followed by My device, Accounts, and More settings.

Wi-Fi Settings

This section describes the Wi-Fi settings. For information on how to use Wi-Fi, see *"Wi-Fi"* on page 162.

Activating Wi-Fi

1. From the Home screen, tap (**Apps**) ➔ **Settings** ➔ (**Connections** tab) ➔ **Wi-Fi**.
2. Tap the ON/OFF slider, located to the right of the Wi-Fi field, to turn Wi-Fi ON .
3. Tap **Scan** to scan for available Wi-Fi networks. For more information, refer to *"Connect to a Wi-Fi Network"* on page 162.

Activating Wi-Fi Direct

Wi-Fi Direct allows device-to-device connections so you can transfer large amounts of data over a Wi-Fi connection.

1. From the Home screen, tap (**Apps**) ➔ **Settings** ➔ (**Connections** tab) ➔ **Wi-Fi**.
2. At the bottom of the Wi-Fi screen, tap the **Wi-Fi Direct** button.

   For more information, refer to *"Wi-Fi Direct"* on page 165.

Advanced Wi-Fi Settings

The advanced Wi-Fi settings allow you to set up and manage wireless access points.

1. From the Home screen, tap (**Apps**) ➔ **Settings** ➔ (**Connections** tab) ➔ **Wi-Fi**.
2. Press (**Menu**) ➔ **Advanced**.

   The following options are available:

   - **Network notification**: alerts you when a new WAP is available.
   - **Passpoint**: allows you to connect to passpoint-enabled Wi-Fi Access Points automatically. Touch and slide the slider to the right to turn it on.
   - **Keep Wi-Fi on during sleep**: allows you to specify when to disconnect from Wi-Fi.
   - **Auto network switch**: allows you to be automatically connected to an Wi-Fi Hotspot as soon as your phone detects it.
   - **MAC address**: view your device's MAC address, required when connecting to some secured networks (not configurable).
   - **IP address**: view your device's IP address.

WPS Push Button

The WPS (Wi-Fi Protected Setup) feature (sometimes associated with a physical or on-screen button on most WAPs) allows you to pair your device and WAP without the need for entering a passcode. This process is similar to Wi-Fi Direct pairing.

In this case, once the WPS feature is active on your WAP, your device can then detect it and then immediately pair to it.

Note: WPS-capable routers appear in the Wi-Fi list of available devices with the term (**WPS available**) below their name.

To pair your device using WPS:

1. Follow the WPS activation instructions specific to your Wireless Access Point.
2. From the Home screen, tap (**Apps**) ➔ **Settings** ➔ (**Connections** tab) ➔ **Wi-Fi**.
3. Press (**Menu**) then tap **WPS push button**.
4. Once the connection is complete, confirm the external router now appears in the Wi-Fi list as connected.

WPS PIN Entry

If a WPS Push Button does not work, there is an alternative WPS connection method where you would use a device generated PIN number to establish the connection. This number is then entered into your WAP's WPS client PIN field to complete the connection.

To pair your device using WPS PIN:

1. From the Home screen, tap (**Apps**) ➔ **Settings** ➔ (**Connections** tab) ➔ **Wi-Fi**.
2. Press (**Menu**) then tap **WPS PIN entry**.
3. Write down the generate PIN number and enter it into your Wi-Fi Router's client PIN field.
   - Once the connection is complete, confirm the external router now appears in the Wi-Fi list as connected.

Bluetooth settings

In this menu you can activate Bluetooth, view or assign a device name, activate your phone so other Bluetooth devices can discover it, or scan for other, available Bluetooth devices with which to pair.

Activating Bluetooth

1. From the Home screen, tap (**Apps**) ➔ **Settings** ➔ (**Connections** tab).
2. Tap the ON/OFF slider, located to the right of the Bluetooth field, to turn Bluetooth ON .
   The Bluetooth icon is displayed on the status bar.

Additional Bluetooth Settings

When Bluetooth is on, additional settings are available.

1. From the Home screen, tap (**Apps**) ➔ **Settings** ➔ (**Connections** tab) ➔ **Bluetooth**.
2. Tap **Scan** to scan for nearby discoverable devices. After searching, tap a device to pair with it. For more information, refer to *"Pairing Bluetooth Devices"* on page 168.

3. Press (**Menu**) and select a Bluetooth setting to configure:
   - **Visibility timeout**: Use this setting to control when to automatically turn off the Discoverable option: 2 minutes, 5 minutes, 1 hour, or Never timeout.
   - **Received files**: Shows the list of files received by using Bluetooth.
4. Tap the checkbox next to the device name to remove the checkmark if you do not want your phone visible to other Bluetooth devices.

Changing the Device Name

1. From the Home screen, tap (**Apps**) ➔ **Settings** ➔ (**More** tab) ➔ **About device**.
2. Tap the **Device name** field and use the on-screen keyboard to edit the current device name.
3. Tap to erase the current device name and enter a new name for this device using the keyboard.
4. Tap **OK** to confirm your setting.

Data Usage

From this screen you can view your Mobile data usage and turn your Mobile data capability On or Off.

1. From the Home screen, tap (**Apps**) ➔ **Settings** ➔ (**Connections** tab) ➔ **Data usage**.
2. Tap **Mobile data** to create a checkmark and turn Mobile data usage on.
3. Tap **Set mobile data limit** to create a checkmark and allow a data limit to be set.
4. Touch and drag the red limit bar to the GB limit that you desire.
5. Tap the **Data usage cycle** drop-down menu and select a date.

   The data usage displays as a visual (chart) and also displays a list of each application with a breakdown of how much data was used per application.

Note: Data is measured by your device. Your service provider may account for data usage differently.

6. Press (**Menu**) to display additional options. Tap to activate.
   - **Data roaming**: enables data roaming on your device.
   - **Restrict background data**: restricts some apps and services from working unless you are connected to a Wi-Fi network.
   - **Auto sync data**: allows your accounts to automatically sync
   - **Show Wi-Fi usage**: displays a Wi-Fi tab that shows Wi-Fi usage.
   - **Mobile hotspots**: displays available mobile hotspots.

More networks

This option displays additional Connectivity information.

- From the Home screen, tap (**Apps**) ➔ **Settings** ➔ (**Connections** tab) ➔ **More networks**.

  Options display for Airplane mode, Mobile networks, Tethering and portable hotspots, VPN, and Wi-Fi Calling.

Airplane mode

Airplane mode allows you to use many of your phone's features, such as Camera, Games, and more, when you are in an airplane or in any other area where making or receiving calls or data is prohibited.

Important! When your phone is in Airplane Mode, it cannot send or receive any calls or access online information or applications.

1. From the Home screen, tap (**Apps**) ➔ **Settings** ➔ (**Connections** tab) ➔ **More networks**.
2. Tap the **Airplane mode** checkbox to create a checkmark and activate the feature.

3. At the **Turn on airplane mode** prompt, tap **OK**.

   The Airplane mode icon is displayed at the top of your screen.

Mobile Networks

Before you use applications such as Google Maps and find your location or search for places of interest, you must enable the Mobile networks options.

Mobile data

To enable data access over the mobile network, this option must be selected. It is set on by default.

1. From the main **Settings** page, tap **Connections** tab ➔ **More networks** ➔ **Mobile networks**.
2. Tap **Mobile data** to create a checkmark and activate the feature.

Data roaming

Data roaming allows you to connect to your service provider's partner networks and access data services when you are out of your service providers area of coverage.

1. From the main **Settings** page, tap **Connections** tab ➔ **More networks** ➔ **Mobile networks**.
2. Tap **Data roaming** to create a checkmark and activate the feature.

Access Point Names

To use Wi-Fi you need access to a wireless access point (hotspot).

1. From the main **Settings** page, tap **Connections** tab ➔ **More networks** ➔ **Mobile networks**.
2. Tap **Access Point Names**.

   A list of the Access Point names display. The active access point displays a green, filled circle to the right of the name.

Network mode

You can configure your device to either automatically select the LTE option (LTE/WCDMA/GSM (auto connect) [by default]), WCDMA/GSM (auto connect), GSM only, or WCDMA only.

- From the main **Settings** page, tap **Connections** tab ➔ **More networks** ➔ **Mobile networks** ➔ **Network mode**.
  - **LTE/WCDMA/GSM (auto connect)** is the default network mode option. This selection allows the device to choose the fastest connection from among the available connection speeds, including LTE.
  - **WCDMA/GSM (auto connect)** allows you to exclude the LTE network and choose from only 4G, 3G, and 2G networks.
  - **WCDMA only** restricts your connection to only the 3G network.
  - **GSM only** restricts your connection to only the 2G network.

Using the LTE Network Option

To confirm you are always using the fastest possible connection, the device has an automatic detection method where it finds both the fastest and most stable connection/communication method from among this selected set (LTE/4G/3G/2G).

1. From the main **Settings** page, tap **Connections** tab ➔ **More networks** ➔ **Mobile networks** ➔ **Network mode**.
2. Tap **LTE/WCDMA/GSM (auto connect)**. A selection indicator displays next to this option to show that it is active.

Using the WCDMA/GSM Option

If you wish to not use LTE but still require a fast connection using the standard 3G/2G network speed, follow these instructions to connect to these network types.

1. From the main **Settings** page, tap **Connections** tab ➔ **More networks** ➔ **Mobile networks** ➔ **Network mode**.
2. Tap **WCDMA/GSM (auto connect)**. A selection indicator displays next to this option to show that it is active.

Using the WCDMA - 3G Only Network

This option uses a 3G connection only.

1. From the main **Settings** page, tap **Connections** tab ➔ **More networks** ➔ **Mobile networks** ➔ **Network mode**.
2. Tap **WCDMA only**. A check mark displays next to this option to indicate that it is active. Connecting to 3G networks slows the data transfer speed and time.

Using the 2G - GSM Only Network

If you are not using applications that require a faster network speed (any application that accesses the network or uses a browser), using the 2G only (WCDMA) network saves battery life.

1. From the main **Settings** page, tap **Connections** tab ➔ **More networks** ➔ **Mobile networks** ➔ **Network mode**.
2. Tap **GSM only**. A check mark displays next to this option to indicate that it is active. Connecting to 2G networks slows the data transfer speed and time.

Network Operators

Using this feature you can view the current network connection. You can also scan and select a network operator manually, or set the network selection to Automatic.

1. From the main **Settings** page, tap **Connections** tab ➔ **More networks** ➔ **Mobile networks**.
2. Tap **Network operators**. The current network connection displays at the bottom of the list.

Important! You must deactivate data service prior to searching for an available network.

---

3. Tap **Search now** to manually search for a network.
4. Tap **Select automatically** to automatically select a network connection.

Note: Connecting to 2G networks slows the data transfer speed and time.

Default setup options

Your phone default is set to Automatic (to automatically search for an available network. You can set this option to Manual to select a network each time you connect.

1. From the main **Settings** page, tap **Connections** tab ➔ **More networks** ➔ **Mobile networks** ➔ **Network operators**.
2. Tap **Default setup**.
3. Tap **Automatic** to allow the device to automatically select a network.
   – or –
4. Tap **Manual** to locate and connect to a network manually.

Tethering and Mobile Hotspot

This option allows you to share your phones's mobile data connection via USB or as a portable Wi-Fi hotspot.

For more information, refer to *"Mobile Hotspot"* on page 171.

For more information, refer to *"USB Tethering"* on page 173.

VPN settings

The VPN settings menu allows you to set up and manage Virtual Private Networks (VPNs).

Note: Before using VPN, you must first set up a screen unlock PIN or password. For more information, refer to *"Lock Screen Settings"* on page 191.

Adding a Basic VPN

Before you add a VPN you must determine which VPN protocol to use: PPTP (Point-to-Point Tunneling Protocol), L2TP(Layer 2 Tunneling Protocol)/IPSec PSK (Pre-shared key based L2TP/IPSec), L2TP/IPSec RSA (Public key based L2TP/IPSec), IPSec Xauth (Cross authentication) PSK, IPSec Xauth RSA, or IPSec Hybrid (authentication) RSA.

1. Before using VPN, you must first set up a screen unlock PIN or password. For more information, refer to *"Lock Screen Settings"* on page 191.
2. From the Home screen, tap (**Apps**) ➔ **Settings** ➔ (**Connections** tab) ➔ **More networks** ➔ **VPN**.
3. Tap (**Add**).
4. Enter a name for the VPN network in the **Name** field.

5. Select a VPN type from the **Type** drop-down menu. The options are:
   - PPTP (Point-to-Point Tunneling Protocol)
   - L2TP/IPSec PSK (Layer 2 Tunneling Protocol / Internet Protocol Security Pre-Shared Key)
   - L2TP/IPSec RSA
   - IPSec Xauth PSK
   - IPSec Xauth RSA
   - IPSec Hybrid RSA
6. Enter the Server address and any other required fields that are dependent upon the **Type** you entered previously.
7. Tap the **Show advanced options** check box to display additional VPN options.
8. Tap **Save** to save your VPN settings.

Wi-Fi Calling

Wi-Fi Calling is a free feature for metroPCS customers using this phone with the new SIM card. Wi-Fi Calling is an excellent solution for coverage issues in and around the home or wherever cellular coverage is limited. Minutes used while connected to the Wi-Fi network count against available rate plan minutes.

The benefits of Wi-Fi Calling include the following:

- Wi-Fi Calling provides a coverage option to improve upon your current in-home coverage experience
- Wi-Fi Calling works anywhere there is a Wi-Fi signal available

Important! A new micro SIM card must be installed within the device prior to using this feature. Wi-Fi must first be active and communicating prior to launching Wi-Fi Calling.

Note: This feature is active by default. If you are in an active Wi-Fi call and go out of range of your Wi-Fi, the call will be dropped.

Note: To avoid international data roaming fees when using Wi-Fi calling when outside the United States, the Data Roaming feature on your device must be turned off.

Note: With certain rate plans, minutes used while connected to the Wi-Fi network count against available rate plan minutes.

Important! If you are not using a new ISIM card, you will receive an **Error: ERxx Invalid SIM** message. You must be using a new ISIM card to use this feature.

Activating Wi-Fi Calling

1. Ensure that the **Wi-Fi connected** icon displays on the Status Bar.
   - If prompted with an on-screen "Did you know your phone can make calls over Wi-Fi" popup, tap **Learn** and follow the remaining on-screen instructions. Tap **Next** ➔ **Done**.
2. From the main **Settings** page, tap **Connections** tab ➔ **More networks**.
3. Locate the **Wi-Fi Calling** field and in a single motion tap the slider so that it changes to the ON position

.
4. If (**Missing 911 Address**) displays in the Status Bar, follow these steps to provide 911 an address for emergency situations:
   - Log into your account and edit your customer profile information.
   - Enter your emergency location information and complete the online registration.
5. From the main **Settings** page, tap **Connections** tab ➔ **More networks** ➔ **Wi-Fi Calling**.

6. Tap **Connection Preferences** and select a preference for use by the Wi-Fi Calling feature:
   - **Wi-Fi Preferred**: Wi-Fi network is preferred over cellular network when making calls. Calling requires you to stay in the Wi-Fi range.
   - **Cellular Network Preferred**: The cellular network is preferred over a Wi-Fi network when making calls.
   - **Never use Cellular Network**: Use only Wi-Fi for calls. Do not use Cellular Network, even if available.
7. Tap **OK** to save the setting.
8. From the main **Settings** page, tap **Connections** tab ➔ **More networks.**
9. Tap **Wi-Fi Calling** slider to toggle off the feature, then tap it again to reactivate the feature and re-register your device with the metroPCS Network.
10. Confirm (**Wi-Fi Calling Ready**) displays in the Status Bar.

Launching Wi-Fi Calling

Note: Verify you are currently connected to a Wireless Access Point.

1. Ensure that the **Wi-Fi connected** icon displays on the status bar.
2. Confirm (**Wi-Fi Calling Ready**) displays in the Status Bar.
3. Use the phone Dialer, Logs, or Contacts list to make a call.
4. Go to the dialer and make a call. Make sure (**Wi-Fi Calling in use**) appears during the call.

When	Action	Then
	Displays on the screen status bar.	You are connected to the network and can make Wi-Fi calls.
	Displays on the screen status bar.	The Wi-Fi Calling feature is active and in use within an active call.
	Does not display on the screen status bar.	You are charged normal calling rate minutes.
	Displays on the screen status bar.	There is an error in the use or 911 registration of the Wi-Fi Calling feature.

While Wi-Fi Calling mode is active, the call button shows a Wi-Fi indicator .

When Wi-Fi Calling is disabled, the call button goes back to show normal operation .

NFC

NFC (Near Field Communication) allows data exchange when you touch your device with another compatible device. This is used for applications such as Android Beam and S Beam.

To activate NFC:

1. From the Home screen, tap (**Apps**) ➔ **Settings** ➔ (**Connections** tab) ➔ **NFC**.
2. Tap the ON/OFF slider, located to the right of the NFC field, to turn NFC ON .

Android Beam

When Android Beam is activated, you can beam app content to another NFC-capable device by holding the devices close together. You can beam browser pages, YouTube videos, contacts, and more.

1. From the Home screen, tap (**Apps**) ➔ **Settings** ➔ (**Connections** tab) ➔ **NFC** ➔ **Android Beam**.
2. Tap the **OFF / ON** icon to turn Android Beam ON.
3. Touch the back of your device with another NFC-capable device and the content is transferred.

S Beam

When S Beam is activated, you can beam files to another NFC-capable device by holding the devices close together. You can beam images and videos from your Gallery, music files from your Music app, and more.

1. From the Home screen, tap (**Apps**) ➔ **Settings** ➔ (**Connections** tab) ➔ **S Beam**.
2. Tap the **OFF / ON** icon to turn S Beam on .
3. Touch the back of your device with another NFC-capable device and the content is transferred.

Nearby devices

This option allows you to share your media files with nearby devices using DLNA and connected to the same Wi-Fi.

1. Connect to a Wi-Fi network. For more information, refer to *"Activating Wi-Fi"* on page 176.
2. From the Home screen, tap (**Apps**) ➔ **Settings** ➔ (**Connections** tab) ➔ **Nearby devices**.
3. Tap the **File sharing** checkbox to create a checkmark and activate File sharing.
4. Verify (**Nearby devices**) appears at the top of the screen.
5. At the Nearby devices prompt, tap **OK**.
6. Tap **Shared contents**, then check the media you would like to share. Tap **OK**.
7. Tap **Allowed devices list**, then select the connected devices you would like to allow.
8. Tap **Not-allowed devices list**, then select the connected devices you would like to not allow.
9. Tap **Download to**, then select the destination of any downloaded (shared) content. Choose from USB storage (Device) or SD card.

10. Tap **Upload from other devices**, then select the actions you'll take when you upload content from other devices. Choose from either Always accept, Always ask, or Always reject.

Screen Mirroring

The Screen Mirroring feature allows you to share the media files on your device screen with an HDMI device such as an HDMI TV.

Note: This feature requires the optional AllShare Cast dongle which is available as an accessory. See your Customer Service Representative for more information.

1. From the Home screen, tap (**Apps**) ➔ **Settings** ➔ (**Connections** tab) ➔ **Screen Mirroring**.
2. Connect the AllShare Cast dongle to the HDMI device using an HDMI A-to-A cable.
3. In a single motion touch and slide the **Screen Mirroring** slider to the right to turn it on. The slider color indicates the activation status.
4. Press (**Menu**) ➔ **Help** for information on using Screen Mirroring.

Note: This feature allows a connection between your device and the optional AllShare Cast Hub, via a shared Wi-Fi Direct connection. The AllShare Cast Hub then allows the communicating TV to mirror what is being shown on the device's display.

Kies via Wi-Fi

Kies via Wi-Fi allows you to sync your PC wirelessly with your device provided they are both on the same Wi-Fi network. You can view and share videos, photos, music, ringtones, and more.

1. From your PC, download the Samsung Kies application if you don't already have it. You can find it at www.samsung.com.
2. From your PC, launch the Samsung Kies application.
3. From your PC, connect to a Wi-Fi network.
4. From the Home screen, tap (**Apps**) ➔ **Settings** ➔ (**Connections** tab) ➔ **Kies via Wi-Fi**.

5. From your device, connect to the same Wi-Fi network that your PC is connected to if you have not already done so. For more information, refer to *"Connect to a Wi-Fi Network"* on page 162.

Lock Screen Settings

Choose settings for unlocking your screen. For more information about using the lock and unlock features, see *"Locking and Unlocking the Touch Screen"* on page 13.

Screen Lock

1. From the Home screen, tap (**Apps**) ➔ **Settings** ➔ (**My device** tab) ➔ **Lock screen**.
2. Tap **Screen lock** for these options then follow the on-screen instructions to set up your Screen lock:
   - **Swipe**: Swipe the screen to unlock it.
   - **Face unlock**: Look at your phone to unlock it.
   - **Face and voice**: Look at your phone and speak to unlock.
   - **Pattern**: A screen unlock pattern is a touch gesture you create and use to unlock your device. Follow the prompts to create or change your screen unlock pattern.
   - **PIN**: Select a PIN to use for unlocking the screen.
   - **Password**: Create a password for unlocking the screen.
   - **None**: No pattern, PIN, or password is required. The screen will never lock.

Lock screen options

Activate or deactivates various Unlock screen functions.

Note: The Lock screen options will differ depending on what type of Screen Lock you have selected in step 2.

1. From the Home screen, tap (**Apps**) ➔ **Settings** ➔ (**My device** tab) ➔ **Lock screen**.
2. The following options are available depending on the Screen Lock type that you have selected:

Swipe options

- **Multiple widgets** allows you to display multiple widgets on your lock screen. Appears as an options after a lock mode is enabled.
- **Lock screen widgets** allows you to lock the widgets that are displayed on your home screens.
- **Shortcuts** sets shortcuts to appear at the bottom of the Lock screen. Touch and slide the slider to the right to turn it on ON.

- **Unlock effect** sets the effect you receive when unlocking the phone. You can select: None, Ripple effect, or Light effect.
- **Help text** shows help information on the Lock screen.
- **Wake up in lock screen** requires that you say a command to wake-up your phone.
- **Set wake-up command** designates your wake-up commands. Tap Set wake-up command and follow the on-screen prompts to create a new verbal command.

Face unlock options

- **Lock screen widgets** allows you to lock the widgets that are displayed on your home screens.
- **Improve facial recognition** allows you to improve your device's face matching capability by capturing your face in different lighting, with or without glasses, and bearded or clean-shaven. Follow the on-screen instructions.
- **Presence check** requires that you blink when using the Face unlock feature. This will increase the security of the feature.
- **Lock automatically** allows you to set a time-out for lock screen.
- **Lock instantly with power key** allows you to lock the screen by pressing .

Pattern options

- **Lock screen widgets** allows you to lock the widgets that are displayed on your home screens.
- **Make pattern visible** allows you to see the pattern as you draw it.
- **Lock automatically** allows you to set a time-out for lock screen.
- **Lock instantly with power key** allows you to lock the screen by pressing .

PIN and Password options

- **Lock screen widgets** allows you to lock the widgets that are displayed on your home screens.
- **Lock automatically** allows you to set a time-out for lock screen.
- **Lock instantly with power key** allows you to lock the screen by pressing .

What If I Forget my Pattern?

If you forget your device's lock pattern, you can unlock your device or reset it using your Google™ Account credentials. When you enter the wrong unlock pattern too many times, you should see an option at the bottom of the screen that says **Forgot pattern?** Follow these steps to use either your PIN or email address.

Important! You can only enter an incorrect lock pattern 5 times before the device is locked.

Important! If you are unsuccessful in retrieving your lock pattern or unlocking your device, please contact customer care for assistance.

To unlock your device with a PIN code:

1. Tap **Backup PIN** (located at the bottom of the screen).
2. Scroll down and tap the **Type PIN code** field and use the on-screen keypad to enter the backup PIN code you setup when you created your lock pattern.
3. Tap **Done**.
4. If you have forgotten your current pattern, tap **Pattern** from the Screen unlock settings menu and follow the procedures to create a new pattern.

To unlock your device using your Google account:

1. Tap **Forgot pattern?** (located at the bottom of the screen).
2. Tap the **Username (email)** and **Password** fields, use the on-screen keyboard to enter your Google Account credentials, and tap **Sign in** to complete the login process.
3. If you have forgotten your Google Account credentials, visit the Google website to recover them. If you still cannot get your Google Account credentials, contact your wireless carrier for additional options.

Display Settings

In this menu, you can change various settings for the display.

- From the Home screen, tap (**Apps**) ➔ **Settings** ➔

(**My device** tab) ➔ **Display**.

  The following options display:

  - **Wallpaper**: allows you to set the Wallpaper for your Home screen, Lock screen, or both. For more information, refer to *"Changing the Wallpaper"* on page 37.
  - **Notification panel**: allows you to set the brightness of your notification panel and also select the quick setting buttons that you want to display at the top of the notification panel. For more information, refer to *"Notification Bar"* on page 39.
  - **Multi window**: tap this option to enable/disable the automatic Multi window feature.
  - **Screen mode**: allows you to select from several different color modes.
  - **Brightness**: configures the LCD Brightness levels. Tap Automatic brightness to allow the phone to self-adjust or drag the slider and tap **OK**.
  - **Auto rotate screen**: allows you to switch the display orientation automatically when you rotate the phone.
  - **Screen timeout**: adjusts the delay time before the screen automatically turns off. Selections are: 15 seconds, 30 seconds, 1 minute, 2 minutes, 5 minutes, 10 minutes, and 30 minutes.
  - **Daydream**: allows you to control what your screen does when your device is docked or sleeping. Tap the OFF / ON icon next to Daydream to turn it on

. Follow the on-screen instructions.
  - **Font style**: allows you to set the font style that your phone will use. You can also tap Get fonts online to choose from a wider selection.
  - **Font size**: allows you to select which size of font is displayed.
  - **Increase legibility**: allows you to enhance the clarity of the text.
  - **Touch key light duration**: allows you to adjust the delay before the Touch key light automatically turns off.
  - **Show battery percentage**: allows you to see the battery charge percentage next to the battery charge icon at the top of the display.
  - **Edit after screen capture**: allows you to go edit a screen immediately after taking a screen capture.

LED indicator

This option allows you to turn on your LED lights for charging, missed events, and incoming notifications. The light will turn on by default unless you turn them off.

1. From the Home screen, tap (**Apps**) ➔ **Settings** ➔ (**My device** tab) ➔ **LED indicator**.
2. Tap the following LED indicator options to turn them on or off:
   - **Charging**: LED lights up when the device is connected to the charger.
   - **Low battery**: LED lights up when the battery level is low.
   - **Notifications**: LED lights up when you have missed calls, messages, or application events.
   - **Voice recording**: LED lights up when you are recording voice. The LED only lights up when the screen is off.

Sound Settings

From this menu you can control the sounds on the phone.

- From the Home screen, tap (**Apps**) ➔ **Settings** ➔ (**My device** tab) ➔ **Sound**.

The following options display:

Volume

The Volume option allows you to change the volume for all phone sounds in one easy location.

1. From the Home screen, tap ➔ **Settings** ➔ **My device** ➔ **Sound** ➔ **Volume**.
2. Touch and drag the slider to adjust the sound volume for Music, video, games and other media, Ringtone, Notifications, and System.
3. Tap **OK**.

Vibration intensity

Vibration intensity allows you to select how intense the vibration is for different options.

1. From the Home screen, tap (**Apps**) ➔ **Settings** ➔ (**My device** tab) ➔ **Sound** ➔ **Vibration intensity**.
2. Touch and drag the slider to adjust the Vibration intensity for Incoming call, Notification, and Haptic feedback.
3. Tap **OK**.

Ringtones

This option allows you to set the ringtone.

1. From the Home screen, tap (**Apps**) ➔ **Settings** ➔ (**My device** tab) ➔ **Sound**.
2. Tap **Ringtones**.
3. Tap a ringtone and tap **OK**.

   – or –

   Tap **Add** to select a file from your music files.

Vibrations

This option allows you to set your phone to vibrate and ring.

1. From the Home screen, tap (**Apps**) ➔ **Settings** ➔ (**My device** tab) ➔ **Sound**.
2. Tap **Vibrations**.
3. Select a vibration pattern and tap **OK**.

   – or –

   Tap **Create** and follow the on-screen instructions to create your own vibration.

Default notification sound

This option allows you to set the default ringtone that will sound for notifications and alarms.

1. From the Home screen, tap (**Apps**) ➔ **Settings** ➔ (**My device** tab) ➔ **Sound**.
2. Tap **Default notification sound**.
3. Tap a ringtone and tap **OK**.

Vibrate when ringing

This option allows you to enable your phone to vibrate whenever it rings.

1. From the Home screen, tap (**Apps**) ➔ **Settings** ➔ (**My device** tab) ➔ **Sound**.
2. Tap **Vibrate when ringing** to create a checkmark and enable the feature.

System Tone Settings

The System tone settings are used when you use the dialing pad, make a screen selection, lock your screen, or tap the screen.

1. From the Home screen, tap (**Apps**) ➔ **Settings** ➔ (**My device** tab) ➔ **Sound**.
2. Tap any of the following options to create a checkmark and activate the feature:
   - **Dialing keypad tone**: makes a sound when you tap a key on the keyboard.
   - **Touch sounds**: makes a sound when you touch the screen.
   - **Screen lock sound**: makes a sound when your screen is locked or unlocked.
   - **Haptic feedback**: makes a vibration when you tap soft keys and on certain UI interactions.

Adapt sound

The Adapt sound feature allows you to customize your call sounds.

1. From the Home screen, tap (**Apps**) ➔ **Settings** ➔ (**My device** tab) ➔ **Sound** ➔ **Adapt sound**.
2. Read the instructions and tap **Start**.
3. Follow the on-screen instructions to set up your personal call sound.

Home screen mode

Home screen mode allows you to set your display to the conventional layout of **Standard mode** or provide an easier user experience for the first-time smartphone users using **Easy mode**.

1. From the Home screen, tap (**Apps**) ➔ **Settings** ➔ (**My device** tab) ➔ **Home screen mode**.
2. Select one of the following options:
   - **Standard mode**: provides conventional layout for the apps and widgets on your home screens.

- **Easy mode**: provides easier user experience for first-time smartphone users on the home screens.

3. Tap **Apply**.

Call Settings

To access the Call settings menu:

- From the Home screen, tap (**Apps**) ➔ **Settings** ➔ (**My device** tab) ➔ **Call**.

  – or –

- From the Home screen, tap (**Phone**) ➔ (**Menu**) ➔ **Call settings**.

Call rejection

1. From the Home screen, tap (**Apps**) ➔ **Settings** ➔ (**My device** tab) ➔ **Call** ➔ **Call rejection**.
2. Tap **Auto reject mode** and tap one of the following options:
   - **Off**: to turn Auto reject mode off.
   - **All numbers**: to reject all calls.
   - **Auto reject numbers**: to reject all calls in your Reject list.
3. Tap **Auto reject list**.
4. Tap to manually add numbers to the Reject list.
5. Tap **Unavailable**, to create a checkmark and automatically reject all calls that are not in your Contacts list.

Set rejection messages

1. From the Home screen, tap (**Apps**) ➔ **Settings** ➔ (**My device** tab) ➔ **Call** ➔ **Set up call rejection messages**.
2. Tap to manually add a reject message.

   – or –

   Tap one of the pre-written messages to be displayed when you want the call to be rejected. You can edit the message if desired.
3. Tap **Save** to save the reject message.

Answering/ending calls

1. From the Home screen, tap (**Apps**) ➔ **Settings** ➔ (**My device** tab) ➔ **Call** ➔ **Answering/ending calls**.
2. The following options are available:
   - **The home key answers calls**: Tap this option to be able to accept incoming calls by pressing the Home key.
   - **Voice control**: Tap this option to be able to accept incoming calls by using your voice.
   - **The power key ends calls**: This option will allow you to end a call by pressing the power key without turning off the screen.

Turn off screen during calls

This option turns on the proximity sensor during calls so that your phone will know to turn the screen off to save power.

- From the Home screen, tap (**Apps**) ➔ **Settings** ➔ (**My device** tab) ➔ **Call** ➔ **Turn off screen during calls** to create a checkmark and enable the feature.

Call alerts

1. From the Home screen, tap (**Apps**) ➔ **Settings** ➔ (**My device** tab) ➔ **Call** ➔ **Call alerts**.
2. Tap the following options to create a checkmark and activate the features:
   - **Answer vibration**: enables your phone to vibrate when the called party answers the phone.
   - **Call-end vibration**: enables your phone to vibrate when the call ends.
   - **Call connect tone**: plays a tone when a call is connected.
   - **Minute minder**: beeps twice every minute that you are on a call.
   - **Call end tone**: plays a tone when a call is ended.
   - **Alerts during calls**: turns on alarm and message notifications during a call.

Call accessories

1. From the Home screen, tap (**Apps**) ➔ **Settings** ➔ (**My device** tab)➔ **Call** ➔ **Call accessories**.
2. The following options are available:
   - **Automatic answering**: configures the device to automatically answer and incoming call when a headset is detected.
   - **Automatic answering timer**: configures the time delay before the device automatically accepts the incoming call.
   - **Outgoing call conditions**: allows you to make calls even when the device is locked.

Wi-Fi Calling

Wi-Fi Calling is a free feature for metroPCS customers using this device with the new SIM card. Wi-Fi Calling is an excellent solution for coverage issues in and around the home or wherever cellular coverage is limited. Minutes used while connected to the Wi-Fi network count against available rate plan minutes.

- From the Home screen, tap (**Apps**) ➔ **Settings** ➔ (**My device** tab)➔ **Call** ➔ **Wi-Fi Calling**.

For more information, refer to *"Wi-Fi Calling"* on page 185.

Additional settings

1. From the Home screen, tap (**Apps**) ➔ **Settings** ➔ (**My device** tab) ➔ **Call** ➔ **Additional settings**.
2. Tap one of the following options:
   - **Caller ID**: allows you to choose how your Caller ID will be displayed. Select Network default, Hide number, or Show number.
   - **Call forwarding**: allows you to forward your calls to another number.
   - **Auto area code**: allows you to automatically prepend a specific area code to all outbound calls.

- **Call barring**: blocks specific types of calls (All outgoing calls, International calls, etc..)
- **Call waiting**: the network service informs you when someone is trying to reach you during another call. Tap to activate.
- **Auto redial**: automatically redials the last number if the call was either cut off or was unable to connect. Tap to activate.
- **Fixed dialing numbers**: allows you to restrict outgoing calls to a limited set of phone numbers.

Call Waiting Settings

The Call Waiting feature allows you to answer an incoming call while you have a call in progress, if this service is supported by the network, and you must first activate the Call Waiting feature:

- From the Home screen, tap (**Apps**) ➔ **Settings** ➔ (**My device** tab) ➔ **Call** ➔ **Additional settings** ➔ **Call waiting**.
  - You are notified of an incoming call by a call waiting tone.

Call Forwarding Settings

1. From the Home screen, tap (**Apps**) ➔ **Settings** ➔ (**My device** tab) ➔ **Call** ➔ **Additional settings** ➔ **Call forwarding**.
2. Tap one of the following options:
   - **Always forward**: allows you to forward all voice calls.
   - **Forward when busy** allows you to forward voice calls to a designated number instead of your voice mail number if you are on another phone call.
   - **Forward when unanswered**: allows you to forward voice calls to a designated number instead of your voicemail number when there is no answer on your phone. You can also select the amount of time that the phone delays before forwarding.
   - **Forward when unreachable**: allows you to forward voice calls to a designated number instead of your voicemail number when you are not in an area covered by your service provider or when your phone is switched off.

Using Fixed Dialing Numbers

Enabling FDN

1. From the Home screen, tap (**Apps**) ➔ **Settings** ➔

(**My device** tab) ➔ **Call** ➔ **Additional settings** ➔ **Fixed dialing numbers**.
2. Tap **Turn on FDN**.
3. At the prompt, enter your PIN2 code and tap **OK**.
   FDN is enabled.
4. To enable FDN after it has been disabled, tap **Turn off FDN**, enter your PIN2 code and tap **OK**.

Important! Not all SIM cards use a PIN2 code. If your SIM card does not, this menu does not display.
The PIN2 code is provided by your carrier. Entering an incorrect PIN2 code could cause the phone to lock. Contact customer service for assistance.

Changing the PIN2 Code

1. From the Home screen, tap (**Apps**) ➔ **Settings** ➔

(**My device** tab) ➔ **Call** ➔ **Additional settings** ➔ **Fixed dialing numbers**.
2. Tap **Change PIN2**.
3. At the prompt, enter your old PIN2 code.
4. At the prompt, enter a new PIN2 code.
5. Confirm your PIN2 code.

Managing the FDN List

When this feature is enabled, you can make calls only to phone numbers stored in the FDN list on the SIM card.

Note: Before you can manage an FDN list a list must be created.

1. From the Home screen, tap (**Apps**) ➔ **Settings** ➔ (**My device** tab) ➔ **Call** ➔ **Additional settings** ➔ **Fixed dialing numbers**.
2. Tap **FDN list**.
3. A list of all existing FDN numbers will be displayed.

Ringtones and keypad tones

1. From the Home screen, tap (**Apps**) ➔ **Settings** ➔ (**My device** tab) ➔ **Call** ➔ **Ringtones and keypad tones**.
2. Tap **Ringtones**, select a ringtone, and tap **OK**.
3. Tap **Vibrations**, select a vibration type, and tap **OK**.
4. Tap **Vibrate when ringing** to create a checkmark if you want your phone to vibrate when a call is incoming.
5. Tap **Keypad tones** to create a checkmark if you want tones to play when the keypad is pressed.

Personalize call sound

This option allows you to personalize the sounds you hear during a call with and without earphones.

1. From the Home screen, tap (**Apps**) ➔ **Settings** ➔ (**My device** tab) ➔ **Call** ➔ **Personalize call sound**.
2. At the Personalize call sound display, tap one of the following options:
   - **In-call sound EQ**: the In-call sound equalizer allows you to set your call sound during calls. Select from Off, Soft sound, Clear sound, Adapt Sound left, or Adapt Sound right.
   - **Adapt sound**: allows you to customize your sounds. Follow the on-screen instructions to set up your personal call sound.

Noise reduction

This option helps to suppress background noise from your side during a call.

- From the Home screen, tap (**Apps**) ➔ **Settings** ➔ (**My device** tab) ➔ **Call** ➔ **Noise reduction** to create a checkmark and enable the feature.

Increase volume in pocket

This option increases the ringtone volume when the device is in a pocket or a bag. It uses the proximity sensor to detect its location.

- From the Home screen, tap (**Apps**) ➔ **Settings** ➔ (**My device** tab) ➔ **Call** ➔ **Increase volume in pocket** to create a checkmark and enable the feature.

Voicemail service

1. From the Home screen, tap (**Apps**) ➔ **Settings** ➔ (**My device** tab) ➔ **Call** ➔ **Voicemail Service**. Voicemail service provided by your carrier is the default.
2. Tap **My carrier** to remove the carrier Voicemail service.

Voicemail settings

You can view or modify your voicemail number from this menu.

1. From the Home screen, tap (**Apps**) ➔ **Settings** ➔ (**My device** tab) ➔ **Call** ➔ **Voicemail settings**.
2. Tap the **Voice mail number** field, backspace to erase the digits, and enter a new voicemail number using the keypad, then tap **OK**.
3. Tap **OK**.

Sound

You can select a unique ringtone for Voicemail alerts.

1. From the Home screen, tap (**Apps**) ➔ **Settings** ➔ (**My device** tab) ➔ **Call** ➔ **Sound**.
2. Tap a ringtone to hear it played.
3. Select a ringtone and tap **OK**.

Vibrate

This option allows you select vibration settings for Voicemail alerts.

1. From the Home screen, tap (**Apps**) ➔ **Settings** ➔ (**My device** tab) ➔ **Call**.
2. Tap **Vibrate** to create a checkmark and activate the Vibrate feature.

TTY Mode

A TTY (also known as a TDD or Text Telephone) is a telecommunications device that allows people who are deaf, hard of hearing, or who have speech or language disabilities, to communicate by telephone.

Your phone is compatible with select TTY devices. Please check with the manufacturer of your TTY device to ensure that it is compatible with digital cell phones.

Your phone and TTY device will connect via a special cable that plugs into your phone's headset jack. If this cable was not provided with your TTY device, contact your TTY device manufacturer to purchase the connector cable.

1. From the Home screen, tap (**Apps**) ➔ **Settings** ➔ (**My device** tab) ➔ **Call** ➔ **TTY mode**.
2. Tap **TTY Full**, **TTY HCO**, or **TTY VCO**. A green checkmark will appear. Tap **TTY Off** to turn it off.

Hearing aids

This option allows you to turn on Hearing aid compatibility on your device.

1. From the Home screen, tap (**Apps**) ➔ **Settings** ➔ (**My device** tab) ➔ **Call**.
2. Tap **Hearing aids** to create a checkmark and enable the Hearing aid compatibility feature.

Blocking Mode

When Blocking mode is enabled, notifications for selected features will be disabled. You will only receive notifications of incoming calls from people on your allowed list.

1. From the Home screen, tap (**Apps**) ➔ **Settings** ➔ (**My device** tab) ➔ **Blocking mode**.
2. In a single motion touch and slide the **Blocking mode** slider to the right to turn it on . Confirm that the Blocking mode active icon appears in the Status bar.
3. Place a green checkmark adjacent to those features you would like to enable. Choose from: Block incoming calls, Turn off notifications, Turn off alarm and timer, and Turn off LED indicator.
4. Configure a timeframe for these features to be active. Remove the checkmark from the **Always** field to configure the **From** and **To** time fields.
5. Tap **Allowed contacts** to assign those contacts that are exempted from these rules. Choose from None, All contacts, Favorites, or Custom. Allowed contacts will then appear in the **Allowed contact list**.

Driving Mode

When Driving mode is enabled, incoming calls and notifications will be read out automatically.

1. From the Home screen, tap (**Apps**) ➔ **Settings** ➔ (**My device** tab) ➔ **Driving mode**.
2. Tap the **OFF / ON** icon next to **Driving mode** to the right to turn it on .

   Confirm that the Driving mode active icon appears in the Status bar.

   All incoming calls and notifications will be read out automatically.

Note: You can disable Driving mode by saying “Driving mode off” while in S voice, or by accessing the Settings menu and sliding the Driver mode slider to the off position or by using the Notification panel.

Power saving mode

Power saving mode allows you to manage your phone to conserve power.

1. From the Home screen, tap (**Apps**) ➔ **Settings** ➔ (**My device** tab) ➔ **Power saving mode**.
2. Tap the **OFF / ON** icon next to **Power saving mode** to turn Power saving mode on .
3. Tap the following options to create a checkmark and conserve power:
   - **CPU power saving**: allows you to limit the maximum performance of the CPU.
   - **Screen power saving**: allows you to lower the screen power level.
   - **Turn off haptic feedback**: allows you to turn off vibration when you tap or touch the screen.
4. Tap **Learn about Power saving mode** to learn about various ways to conserve battery power.

Accessory Settings

This menu allows you to select the Audio output mode when using a car or desk dock.

1. From the Home screen, tap (**Apps**) ➔ **Settings** ➔ (**My device** tab) ➔ **Accessory**.
2. Tap **Dock sound** to play sounds when inserting or removing the phone from the dock.
3. Tap **Audio output mode** to use the external dock speakers when the phone is docked.
4. Tap **Desk home screen display** to display the desk home screen whenever the phone is docked.
5. Tap **Automatic unlock** if you are using a phone cover and you want your phone to unlock when you open the cover.
6. Tap **Audio output** to set your Audio output to Stereo or Surround.

Accessibility

Accessibility services are special features to make using the device easier for those with certain physical disabilities. Use the Accessibility settings to activate these services.

Note: You can download accessibility applications from Play Store and manage their use here.

1. From the Home screen, tap (**Apps**) ➔ **Settings** ➔

(**My device** tab) ➔ **Accessibility**.
2. The following options are available:
   - **Auto rotate screen**: automatically rotate the screen from landscape to portrait when you rotate your phone.
   - **Screen timeout**: timeout the accessibility feature after a defined amount of time.
   - **Lock automatically**: to lock the screen automatically after a selected amount of time.

Note: The Lock automatically function is only available if your device is already using the screen lock feature.

   - **Speak passwords**: reads out password information.
   - **Answering/ending calls**: accept incoming calls by pressing the home key or end calls using the power key.
   - **Show shortcut**: allow the accessibility shortcut under the device options to be used by pressing and holding the power key.
   - **Manage accessibility**: save and update your accessibility settings or share them with another device. You can export your settings, import a previously saved file, or share your file with another device.
   - **TalkBack**: activate the TalkBack feature.

Note: TalkBack, when installed and enabled, speaks feedback to help blind and low-vision users.

Important! TalkBack can collect all of the text you enter, except passwords, including personal data and credit card numbers. It may also log your user interface interactions with the device.

   - **Font size**: change the size of the fonts used on the device within menus, options, etc. Choose from: Tiny, Small, Normal, Large, or Huge.

- **Magnification gestures**: use exaggerated gestures such as triple-tapping, double pinching, and dragging two fingers across the screen.
- **Negative colors**: reverse the display of on-screen colors from White text on a Black background to Black text on a White background.
- **Color adjustment**: allows you to adjust the display colors if you are color blind and have difficulty reading the display because of the colors. Touch and slide the slider to the right to turn it on. Follow the on-screen instructions.
- **Accessibility shortcut**: allows you to quickly enable accessibility features in 2 quick steps. Touch and slide the slider to the right to turn it on. Follow the on-screen instructions.
- **Text-to-speech options**: allows you to adjust your text-to-speech settings. For more information, refer to *"Speech Settings"* on page 214.
- **Enhance web accessibility**: allows apps to install scripts from Google that make their Web content more accessible. Tap Allow.
- **Sound balance**: allows you to use the slider to set the Left and Right balance when using a stereo device.
- **Mono audio**: allows you to enable stereo audio to be compressed into a single mono audio stream for use with a single earbud/earphone.
- **Turn off all sounds**: allows you to mute every sound made by the device during taps, selections, notifications, etc.
- **Flash notification**: allows you to set your camera light to blink whenever you receive a notification.
- **Assistant menu**: allows you to improve the device accessibility for users with reduced dexterity. Touch and slide the slider to the right to turn it on. Follow the on-screen instructions.
- **Press and hold delay**: allows you to select a time interval for this action. Choose from: Short, Medium, or Long.
- **Interaction control**: allows you to enable or disable motions and screen timeout. You can also block areas of the screen from touch interaction. Touch and slide the slider to the right to turn it on

. Follow the on-screen instructions.

One-handed operation

The one-handed operation settings help you to use your phone keypads easily with only one hand.

1. From the Home screen, tap (**Apps**) ➔ **Settings** ➔

(**My device** tab) ➔ **One-handed operation**.
2. The following options are available:
   - **Keypad and in-call buttons**: allows you to adjust the position of the dialing keypad and in-call buttons to the left or the right to make it easier to use with one hand.
   - **Calculator**: allows you to adjust the position of the calculator keypad to the left or the right to make it easier to use with one hand.
   - **Unlock pattern**: allows you to adjust the scale of the unlock pattern for use with one hand.
   - **Learn about one-handed operation**: provides more information about using one-handed operation.

Language and input

This menu allows you to configure the language in which to display the menus. You can also set on-screen keyboard options.

Language

You can change the language used by your device by following these steps:

1. From the Home screen, tap (**Apps**) ➔ **Settings** ➔

(**My device** tab) ➔ **Language and input** ➔ **Language**.
2. Tap a language from the list.

Keyboards and Input Methods

You can change the keyboard used by your device by following these steps:

1. From the Home screen, tap (**Apps**) ➔ **Settings** ➔

(**My device** tab) ➔ **Language and input**.
2. Tap **Default** and select a keyboard.
   Select Samsung keyboard or Swype.
3. Tap **Set up input methods**.
4. Tap the icon next to the input method that you would like to configure the settings for.

5. Based on your selection of input method, the appropriate settings will appear and are explained below.

Google voice typing settings

From this menu you can set Google Voice typing options.

1. From the Home screen, tap (**Apps**) ➔ **Settings** ➔ (**My device** tab) ➔ **Language and input**.
2. Tap the icon next to **Google voice typing**.
3. The following options are available:
   - **Choose input languages**: tap on a language that you want to input. Select **Automatic** to use the local language or select a language from the list.
   - **Block offensive words:** tap to create a checkmark and enable the blocking of recognized offensive words from the results of your voice-input Google typing.
   - **Download offline speech recognition**: Enables voice input while offline.

Samsung Keyboard settings

From this menu you can set Samsung keyboard options.

1. From the Home screen, tap (**Apps**) ➔ **Settings** ➔ (**My device** tab) ➔ **Language and input**.
2. Tap the icon next to **Samsung keyboard**.
   - **Alphabets** allows you to choose a keyboard configuration when you are entering letters (Qwerty keyboard [default] or 3x4 keyboard).
   - **Numbers and symbols** allows you to choose a keyboard configuration when you are entering numbers or symbols (Qwerty keyboard [default] or 3x4 keyboard).
   - **Input languages** sets the input language. Tap a language from the available list. The keyboard is updated to the selected language.
   - **Predictive text** enables predictive text entry mode. This must be enabled to gain access to the advanced settings. Touch and hold to access the advanced settings. Touch and slide the slider to the right to turn it on ON.
   - **SwiftKey Flow** allows you to type words by swiping between on-screen keys.

- **Cursor control** allows you to move the cursor by sliding your finger across the keyboard.
- **Key-tap vibration** enables vibration feedback when you tap an on-screen key.
- **Key-tap sound** enables auditory feedback when you tap an on-screen key.
- **Handwriting** enables the device to recognize on-screen handwriting and convert it to text.
- **Advanced** displays the following advanced options:
  - **Auto capitalization** automatically capitalizes the first letter of the first word in each sentence (standard English style).
  - **Auto spacing** automatically inserts spaces between words.
  - **Auto punctuate** automatically inserts a full stop in a sentence by tapping the space bar twice when using the on-screen QWERTY keyboard.
  - **Character preview** provides an automatic preview of the current character selection within the text string. This is helpful when multiple characters are available within one key.
- **Help** displays more information on using the Samsung keyboard.
- **Reset settings** resets the keyboard settings back to their original configuration.

Predictive Text Settings

From this menu you can set Predictive Text settings.

1. From the Home screen, tap (**Apps**) ➔ **Settings** ➔ (**My device** tab) ➔ **Language and input**.
2. Tap the icon next to **Samsung keyboard**.
3. Tap the ON/OFF slider, located to the right of the Predictive text field, to turn it ON.
4. Tap **Predictive text**.
5. The following options are available:
   - **Personalized data**: allows you to use personal language that you have added to make your prediction results better.
   - **Learn from Facebook**: allows you to login to your Facebook account so your phone can learn your Facebook style.
   - **Learn from Gmail**: allows you to login to your Gmail account so your phone can learn your Gmail style.
   - **Learn from Twitter**: allows you to login to your Twitter account so your phone can learn your Twitter style.
   - **Learn from Messaging**: allows your device to learn from your Messages.

- **Learn from Contacts**: allows your device to learn from your Contacts.
- **Clear remote data**: deletes anonymous data that is stored on the personalization server.
- **Clear personal data**: removes all personalized data that you have entered.
- **Privacy policy**: click the link to read the privacy policy. Follow the on-screen instructions.

Swype Keypad Settings

To configure Swype settings:

1. From the Home screen, tap (**Apps**) ➔ **Settings** ➔ (**My device** tab) ➔ **Language and input**.
2. Tap the icon next to **Swype**.
3. Tap **Settings** on the left side of the screen to alter these settings:
   - **Vibrate on keypress**: activates a vibration sensation as you enter text using the keypad.
   - **Sound on keypress**: turns on sounds generated by the Swype application.
   - **Pop-up on keypress**: displays the character above the key when typing.
   - **Show complete trace**: once enabled, sets wether or not to display the complete Swype path.
   - **Auto-capitalization**: automatically capitalizes the first letter of a sentence.
   - **Auto-spacing**: automatically inserts a space between words. When you finish a word, just lift your finger or stylus and start the next word.
   - **Next word prediction**: once enabled, predicts the next word in your text string based on your current text entries.
   - **Show Voice key**: once enabled, displays the Voice icon on your Swype keyboard so you can use the Voice input option.
4. Tap **My Words** on the left side of the screen to access the following options:
   - **Backup & Sync**: allows you to backup your Swype dictionary and sync your Swype dictionary across multiple devices.
   - **Living Language**: when enabled, this feature automatically updates your Swype dictionary with popular new words.
   - **Social integration**: allows you to learn information from your Facebook, Twitter, and Gmail accounts to help you while using Swype.

- **Edit my dictionary**: allows you to edit your personal Swype dictionary.
- **Clear language data**: deletes all of your personal language data, including your words.
- **Contribute usage data**: when enabled, allows the Nuance® application to collect usage data for better word predictions.
- **Cellular data**: when enabled, activates cellular data usage by the Swype application so it can receive program updates, language downloads, and other related features via your existing data connection.

5. Tap **Languages** on the left side of the screen to activate and select the current text input language. Default language is English. Touch **Download languages**, to download additional languages.
6. Tap **Gestures** on the left side of the screen to view helpful information on using gestures while using Swype.
7. Tap **Help** on the left side of the screen to see the following options:
   - **How to Swype**: provides tips on how to learn to use Swype.
   - **Show helpful tips**: once enabled, displays helpful tips and hints as you are using Swype.
   - **Version**: displays the software version information.
8. Tap **Updates** on the left side of the screen to download any new Swype updates. If an update is available, it will display under the updates heading. If no updates are displayed, then check back later to see any available updates.

Speech Settings

This menu allows you to set the speech settings for Voice input.

1. From the Home screen, tap **(Apps)** ➔ **Settings** ➔ **(My device** tab) ➔ **Language and input**.
2. Tap **Voice search** to configure the following:
   - **Language**: choose a language for your voice input.
   - **Speech output**: Sets whether you will use speech output always or only when using hands-free.
   - **Block offensive words**: enable or disable blocking of recognized offensive words from the results of your voice-input Google searches.

- **Hotword detection**: enable to being able to launch voice search by saying the word “Google”.
- **Download offline speech recognition**: enables voice input while offline.
- **Personalized recognition**: enables the improvement of speech recognition accuracy.
- **Google Account dashboard**: allows you to manage your collected data.
- **Bluetooth headset**: records audio through a connected Bluetooth headset.

3. Tap **Text-to-speech options** and select **Samsung text-to-speech engine** or **Google Text-to-speech Engine**.
4. Tap next to the preferred TTS engine configure the following settings:
   - **Language**: allows you to set the language for spoken text.
   - **Settings for Google Text-to-speech Engine**: allows you to view Open Source Licenses.
   - **Settings for Samsung text-to-speech engine** allows you to view Open Source Licenses.
   - **Install voice data**: allows you to install voice data for speech synthesis.
5. Scroll down to the **General** section to access the following options:
   - **Speech rate**: Set the speed at which the text is spoken.
   - **Listen to an example**: Play a sample of speech synthesis (available if voice data is installed).

Pointer speed

This option sets your Pointer speed for your mouse or trackpad when you are using a keyboard dock accessory.

1. From the Home screen, tap (**Apps**) ➔ **Settings** ➔

(**My device** tab) ➔ **Language and input**.
2. Tap **Pointer speed** then drag the slider to the right to go faster or to the left to go slower.
3. Tap **OK** to save your setting.

Motions and Gestures

The Motions and Gestures settings allow you to set up various Motion activation services. For more information on using gestures, see *"Using Motions and Gestures"* on page 26.

- From the Home screen, tap (**Apps**) ➔ **Settings** ➔ (**My device** tab) ➔ **Motions and gestures**.

Motion

Motion allows you to control your device by performing natural movements.

1. From the Motions and gestures screen, tap **Motion**.
2. Tap the ON/OFF icon ON at the top of your screen to activate Motion.
3. The following options are available:
   - **Direct call**: Once enabled, the device will dial the currently displayed on-screen Contact entry as soon as you place the device to your ear. Tap the ON/OFF icon ON to turn it on.
   - **Smart alert**: Once enabled, pickup the device to be alerted and notified of you have missed any calls or messages. Tap the ON/OFF icon ON to turn it on.
   - **Zoom**: Once enabled, you must be on a screen where content can be zoomed. In a single motion, touch and hold two points on the display then tilt the tilt the device back and forth to zoom in or out. Tap the ON/OFF icon ON to turn it on.
   - **Move an icon**: Once enable, you can move an icon to another page by holding the icon, then moving the device to the left or right. Tap the ON/OFF icon ON to turn it on.
   - **Browse an image**: Once enabled, touch and hold a desired on-screen image to pan around it. Move the device left or right to pan vertically or up and down to pan horizontally. Tap the ON/OFF icon ON to turn it on.
   - **Mute/pause**: Once enabled, mute incoming calls and any playing sounds by turning the device display down on a surface. Tap the ON/OFF icon ON to turn it on.

Palm motion

Palm motion allows you to control your device by touching your screen with the palm of your hand.

1. From the Motions and gestures screen, tap **Palm motion**.
2. Tap the ON/OFF icon at the top of your screen to activate Palm motion.
3. The following options are available:
   - **Capture screen**: Once enabled, you can capture any on-screen information swiping across the screen. In a single motion, press the side of your hand on the screen and swipe form left to right. The image is then copied to the clipboard. Tap the ON/OFF icon to turn it on.
   - **Mute/pause**: Once enabled, you can pause any on-screen video or mute any current sound by simply covering the screen with your hand. Once you remove your hand from the screen, the device goes back to normal by either continuing to play the current video or unmuting the current sound. Tap the ON/OFF icon to turn it on.

Gyroscope calibration

Gyroscope calibration allows you to calibrate motion correctly using the device's built-in gyroscope.

1. From the Motions and gestures screen, tap **Gyroscope calibration**.
2. Place your device on a flat surface.
3. Tap **Calibrate**.
4. When finished, **Calibrated** will appear on your screen. Tap to return to the previous screen.

Smart screen

The Smart screen options allow you to customize your screen settings to make the screen more responsive and easier to use.

1. From the Home screen, tap (**Apps**) ➔ **Settings** ➔

(**My device** tab) ➔ **Smart screen**.
2. Tap any of the following options to create a checkmark and activate the features:
   - **Smart stay**: disables the screen timeout if your phone detects that your face is watching the screen.

Air view

With the Air view feature, you can hover your finger over the screen and Air view features will be displayed. For example, you can hover your finger over a scheduled item in your calendar to see more details.

1. From the Home screen, tap (**Apps**) ➔ **Settings** ➔

(**My device** tab) ➔ **Air view**.
2. Tap the ON/OFF icon

at the top of your screen to activate Air view.
3. The following options are available. Tap an option to create a checkmark and activate the feature.
   - **Information preview**: allows you to see information previews, extended text, and enlarged images when you hover your finger over the screen.
   - **Progress preview**: allows you to preview a scene or show elapsed time when you hover your finger over the progress bar while watching a video.
   - **Speed dial preview**: allows you to see the contacts and their speed dial numbers when you hover your finger over them in your contacts list.
   - **Webpage magnifier**: allows you to see magnified links on webpages when you hover your finger over them.
   - **Sound and haptic feedback**: allows you to play sound and feel vibration when you hover your finger over Air view items.

Voice control

The Voice control settings allow you to set up voice commands to control your device.

1. From the Home screen, tap (**Apps**) ➔ **Settings** ➔

(**My device** tab) ➔ **Voice control**.
2. Tap the ON/OFF icon

at the top of your screen to activate Voice control.
3. The following options are available. Tap an option to create a checkmark and activate the feature.
   - **Incoming calls**: allows you to answer or reject calls using the commands **Answer** and **Reject**.
   - **Alarm**: allows you to stop or snooze an alarm by using the commands **Stop** and **Snooze**.
   - **Camera**: allows you to take pictures using the voice commands **Capture**, **Shoot**, **Smile**, or **Cheese**.

- **Music**: allows you to control your Music app using the voice commands **Next**, **Previous**, **Play**, **Pause**, **Volume up**, and **Volume down**.

Note: If you set the alert type for calls or alarms to vibration, voice control will not be available.

Add Account

This menu allows you to set up, manage, and synchronize accounts, including your Google and email accounts.

Adding an Account

1. From the Home screen, tap (**Apps**) ➔ **Settings** ➔ (**Accounts** tab) ➔ **Add account**.
2. Tap one of the account types.
3. Use the keyboard and follow the prompts to enter your credentials and set up the account.

   A green circle will appear next to the account type once you have created an account. Your account will also be displayed in the **My accounts** section of the main Accounts menu.

Removing an Account

Important! Removing an account also deletes all of its messages, contacts, and other data from the device.

1. From the Home screen, tap (**Apps**) ➔ **Settings** ➔ (**Accounts** tab).
2. Tap the account which is located in the **My accounts** section.
3. Tap the account name.
4. At the bottom of the screen, tap **Remove account**, then tap **Remove account** at the prompt to remove the account and delete all its messages, contacts, and other data.

Synchronizing Accounts

Select the items you want to synchronize on your account such as Books, Calendar, Contacts, and more.

1. From the Home screen, tap (**Apps**) ➔ **Settings** ➔ Accounts (**Accounts** tab).
2. Tap the account which is located in the **My accounts** section.
3. Select the account name from the top of the screen.
4. Tap **Sync now** to synchronize your account or only tap the Sync items that you want to synchronize.
5. Tap **Cancel sync** to stop the synchronization.
6. Tap **Account settings** to access your account settings.
7. Tap **Storage usage** to see your storage usage for different applications.

Cloud

This feature allows you to use your external cloud storage solution to both synchronize your device to your Samsung account and then backup that local content to the cloud.

Your device comes with a built-in Cloud storage solution known as Dropbox.

Important! This feature requires an active Wi-Fi connection prior to use.

1. Log into your Samsung account and verify it is active.
2. Log into your external cloud storage solution. In our case we are using a Dropbox account. For more information, refer to *"Dropbox"* on page 117.
3. From the Home screen, tap (**Apps**) ➔ **Settings** ➔ Accounts (**Accounts** tab) ➔ **Cloud**.
4. Confirm your Samsung account appears at the top of the screen.
5. Tap **Storage usage** to display an overview of your total used space.

6. Tap **Sync settings**, select which device parameters will be synched, and tap **Sync now**. Choose from: Sync Calendar, Sync Contacts, Sync Internet, and Sync Scrapbook.
7. Tap **Backup** or **Restore** to launch the feature.
   - **Backup**: manually loads up the currently selected categories and backs up the data to your cloud storage location. Tap **Backup** to begin the manual backup process.
   - **Restore**: allows you to retrieve your previously backed up data from your Samsung account and then download it to your device.
8. Tap **Link Dropbox account** ➔ **Allow** to now link your active Dropbox account.

Back up and reset

The Back up and reset settings allow you to back up your data, back up accounts, automatically restore your phone, and reset your phone settings to the factory settings.

Back Up My Data

By setting this option, the Google server will back up all of your settings and data.

1. From the Home screen, tap (**Apps**) ➔ **Settings** ➔

(**Accounts** tab) ➔ **Back up and reset**.
2. Tap **Back up my data** to enable or disable back up of application data, WI-Fi passwords, and other settings to the Google server.

Backup Account

If you have enabled the **Back up my data** option, then the **Backup account** option is available.

1. From the Home screen, tap (**Apps**) ➔ **Settings** ➔

(**Accounts** tab) ➔ **Back up and reset**.
2. Tap **Backup account** and tap your Google Gmail account or tap **Add account** to set your Google Gmail account to be backed up to the Google server.

Automatic Restore

By setting this option, when you reinstall an application, all of your backed up settings and data will be restored.

1. From the Home screen, tap (**Apps**) ➔ **Settings** ➔ (**Accounts** tab) ➔ **Back up and reset**.
2. Tap **Automatic restore** to enable or disable automatic restoration of settings from the Google server.

Factory Data Reset

From this menu you can reset your phone and sound settings to the factory default settings.

1. From the Home screen, tap (**Apps**) ➔ **Settings** ➔ (**Accounts** tab) ➔ **Back up and reset**.
2. Tap **Factory data reset**.

   The Factory data reset screen displays reset information.
3. Tap **Reset device**, then follow the prompts to perform the reset.

Warning! Performing a Factory data reset will erase all data from your phone and internal SD card, including your Google account, system and application data and settings, and downloaded applications. It will not erase current system software, bundled applications, and external SD card files such as music and photos.

Location services

The Location services settings allow you to set up how the phone will determine your location and the sensor settings for your phone.

1. From the Home screen, tap (**Apps**) ➔ **Settings** ➔ (**More** tab) ➔ **Location services**.
2. Tap any of the following options to create a checkmark and activate the service:
   - **Access to my location**: allows apps that have asked your permission to use your location information. Tap the ON/OFF icon to turn it on.
   - **Use GPS satellites**: allows applications to use GPS to pinpoint your location.

- **Use wireless networks**: allows applications to use data from mobile networks and Wi-Fi to help determine your location.
- **My places**: allows you to add location information for your Home, Office, and Car.

Security

The Security settings allow you to determine the security level for your phone.

Encryption

To require a numeric PIN or password to decrypt your phone each time you power it on or encrypt the data on your SD card each time it is connected:

1. From the Home screen, tap (**Apps**) ➔ **Settings** ➔ (**More** tab) ➔ **Security**.
2. You must first set up a screen lock type if you haven't already done so. For more information, refer to *"Screen Lock"* on page 191.
3. Tap **Encrypt device**. For more information, read the displayed help screen.
4. Tap **Encrypt external SD card** to enable the encryption on SD card data that requires a password be entered each time the microSD card is connected.

Tip: Make sure your battery is charged more than 80 percent. Encryption may take an hour or more.

Set up SIM card lock

Prevent another user from using your SIM card to make unauthorized calls or from accessing information stored on your SIM card by protecting the information using a PIN code.

When enabled, your phone will ask for a PIN number each time you use the phone. Using this option you can also change your SIM PIN number.

1. From the Home screen, tap (**Apps**) ➔ **Settings** ➔ (**More** tab) ➔ **Security**.
2. Tap **Set up SIM card lock**.
3. Tap **Lock SIM card**, enter your SIM PIN code, then tap **OK**.

Note: You must activate Lock SIM card before you can change your SIM PIN code.

4. Tap **Change SIM PIN**.
5. Enter your old SIM PIN code and tap **OK**.
6. Enter your new SIM PIN code and tap **OK**.

7. Re-type your new SIM PIN code and tap **OK**.

Make passwords visible

When enabled, password characters display briefly as you touch them while entering passwords.

1. From the Home screen, tap (**Apps**) ➔ **Settings** ➔

(**More** tab) ➔ **Security**.
2. Tap **Make passwords visible** to create a checkmark and enable or disable the display of password characters.

Device Administrators

The Device Administration feature allows you to select one or more administration applications that control your device for security purposes (for example, if your phone is lost of stolen). These applications enforce remote or local device security policies.

Some of the features a device administration application might control are:

- Setting the number of failed password attempts before the device is restored to factory settings.
- Automatically locking the device.
- Restoring factory settings on the device.

Note: If a device uses multiple enabled administration applications, the strictest policy is enforced.

1. From the Home screen, tap (**Apps**) ➔ **Settings** ➔

(**More** tab) ➔ **Security**.
2. Tap **Device administrators**.
3. Select a device administrator and follow the prompts. If no device administrators are listed, you can download them from the Play Store.

Unknown sources

This feature allows you to download and install non-Market applications.

1. From the Home screen, tap (**Apps**) ➔ **Settings** ➔

(**More** tab) ➔ **Security**.
2. Tap **Unknown sources**.

   A check mark is displayed to indicate it is active.

Warning! Enabling this option causes your phone and personal data to be more vulnerable to attack by applications from unknown sources.

Verify apps

This feature allows you to either block or warn you before installing apps that may cause harm to your phone.

1. From the Home screen, tap (**Apps**) ➔ **Settings** ➔ (**More** tab) ➔ **Security**.
2. Tap **Verify apps**.

   A check mark is displayed to indicate it is active.

Trusted Credentials

If a certificate authority (CA) certificate gets compromised or for some other reason you do not trust it, you can disable or remove it.

1. From the Home screen, tap (**Apps**) ➔ **Settings** ➔ (**More** tab) ➔ **Security**.
2. Tap **Trusted credentials**.

   The trusted credentials screen has two tabs:

   - **System**: Displays CA certificates that are permanently installed in the ROM of your device.
   - **User**: Displays any CA certificates that you installed, for example, in the process of installing a client certificate.
3. Tap a CA certificate to examine its details.

   A scrolling screen displays the details.
4. Scroll to the bottom of the details screen and tap **Turn off** to disable a System certificate or **Remove** to remove a User certificate.

Caution! When you disable a system CA certificate, the **Disable** button changes to **Enable**, so you can enable the certificate again, if necessary. When you remove a user-installed CA certificate, it is permanently deleted and must be re-installed, if needed.

5. Tap **OK** to return to the certificate list.

   When enabled, a check mark appears in the check box.

Install from device storage

Install encrypted certificates from an installed memory card.

Note: You must have installed a memory card containing encrypted certificates to use this feature.

1. From the Home screen, tap (**Apps**) ➔ **Settings** ➔ (**More** tab) ➔ **Security**.
2. Tap **Install from device storage**, then choose a certificate and follow the prompts to install.

Clear credentials

Clear stored credentials.

Note: This setting only appears if you have installed encrypted certificates.

1. From the Home screen, tap (**Apps**) ➔ **Settings** ➔ (**More** tab) ➔ **Security**.
2. Tap **Clear credentials** to remove all certificates.

Application Manager

You can download and install applications from Play Store or create applications using the Android SDK and install them on your device. Use Application manager settings to manage applications.

Warning! Because this device can be configured with system software not provided by or supported by Google or any other company, end-users operate these devices at their own risk.

Memory Usage

See how memory is being used by Downloaded or Running applications.

1. From the Home screen, tap (**Apps**) ➔ **Settings** ➔ (**More** tab) ➔ **Application manager**.
2. Tap **DOWNLOADED**, **ON SD CARD, RUNNING**, or **ALL** to display memory usage for that category of applications.

   The graph at the bottom of the Downloaded tab shows used and free device memory. The graph at the bottom of the Running tab shows used and free RAM.

Downloaded

Displays apps you have downloaded onto your device.

1. From the Home screen, tap (**Apps**) ➔ **Settings** ➔ (**More** tab) ➔ **Application manager**.
2. Tap the **DOWNLOADED** tab to view a list of all the downloaded applications on your device.
3. To switch the order of the lists displayed in the Downloaded tabs, press (**Menu**) ➔ **Sort by size** or **Sort by name**.

4. To reset your application preferences, press (**Menu**) ➔ **Reset app preferences**.

Note: This will reset the preferences for disabled apps, disabled app notifications, default applications for actions, and background data restrictions for apps. You will not lose any app data.

5. Tap an application to view and update information about the application, including memory usage, default settings, and permissions.

On SD Card

Displays apps you have downloaded onto your SD card.

1. From the Home screen, tap (**Apps**) ➔ **Settings** ➔ (**More** tab) ➔ **Application manager**.
2. Tap the **ON SD CARD** tab to view a list of all the downloaded applications on your device.
3. To switch the order of the lists displayed in the On SD card tab, press (**Menu**) ➔ **Sort by size** or **Sort by name**.
4. To reset your application preferences, press (**Menu**) ➔ **Reset app preferences**.

Note: When you Reset app preferences, you will not lose any app data.

5. Tap an application to view and update information about the application, including memory usage, default settings, and permissions.

Running Services

View and control services running on your device.

1. From the Home screen, tap (**Apps**) ➔ **Settings** ➔ (**More** tab) ➔ **Application manager**.
2. Tap the **RUNNING** tab. All the applications that are currently running on the device display.
3. Tap **Show cached processes** to display all the cached processes that are running. Tap **Show services in use** to switch back.
4. Tap one of the applications to view application information.

   The following options display:

   - **Stop**: Stops the application from running on the device. This is usually done prior to uninstalling the application.

Warning! Not all services can be stopped. Stopping services may have undesirable consequences on the application or Android System.

- **Report**: Report failure and other application information.

Note: Options vary by application.

Battery

See how much battery power is used for device activities.

1. From the Home screen, tap (**Apps**) ➔ **Settings** ➔ (**More** tab) ➔ **Battery**.

   The battery level displays in percentage. The amount of time the battery was used also displays. Battery usage displays in percentages per application.

2. Tap **Screen**, **Wi-Fi**, **Android OS** or any other listed application to view how it is affecting battery use.

Note: Other applications may be running that affect battery use.

Storage

From this menu you can view the memory allocation for the memory card and USB as well as mount or unmount the SD card.

For more information about mounting or unmounting the SD card, see *"Memory Card"* on page 41.

To view the memory allocation for your external SD card:

- From the Home screen, tap (**Apps**) ➔ **Settings** ➔ (**More** tab) ➔ **Storage**.The available memory displays under the **Total space** and **Available space** headings for both Device memory and SD card.

SD card

- Tap **Unmount SD card** to unmount your SD card so that you can safely remove it, then tap **OK**.

  – or –

1. Tap **Format SD card** to format your SD card. This will delete all data on your SD card including music, videos, and photos.
2. Tap **Format SD card** again.
3. Tap **Delete all** to continue or press to cancel.

Note: The **Format SD card** option is only available when your SD card is mounted.

Date and time

This menu allows you to change the current time and date displayed.

1. From the Home screen, tap (**Apps**) ➔ **Settings** ➔ (**More** tab) ➔ **Date and time**.
2. Tap **Automatic date and time** to allow the network to set the date and time.
3. Tap **Automatic time zone** to allow the network to set the time zone.

Important! Deactivate **Automatic date and time** to manually set the rest of the options.

4. Tap **Set date** and tap the up and down arrows to set the **Month**, **Day**, and **Year** then tap **Set**.
5. Tap **Set time** and tap the up and down arrows to set the **Hour**, **Minute**, and **PM/AM**, then tap **Set**.
6. Tap **Select time zone**, then tap a time zone.
7. Optional: Tap **Use 24-hour format**. If this is not selected the phone automatically uses a 12-hour format.
8. Tap **Select date format** and tap the date format type.

About Device

This menu contains legal information, system tutorial information, and other phone information such as the model number, firmware version, baseband version, kernal version, and software build number.

To access phone information:

1. From the Home screen, tap (**Apps**) ➔ **Settings** ➔ (**More** tab) ➔ **About device**.
2. The following information displays:
   - **Software update**: allows you to update your phone software, if available. For more information, refer to *"Software Update"* on page 230.
   - **Status**: displays the Battery status, Battery level (percentage), Network, Signal strength, Mobile network type, Service state, Roaming status, Mobile network state, My phone number for this device (My phone number), IMEI number, IMEISV number,ICCID, IP address, Wi-Fi MAC address, Bluetooth address, Serial number, Up time, and Device status.

- **Legal information**: This option displays information about Open source licenses, Google legal information, and Samsung legal information. This information clearly provides copyright and distribution legal information and facts as well as Google Terms of Service, Terms of Service for Android-powered Phones, and much more pertinent information as a reference. Read the information and terms, then press ⮌ to return to the Settings menu.
- **Device name**: displays the phone's model name.
- **Model number**: displays the phone's model number.
- **Android version**: displays the android version loaded on this handset.
- **Baseband version**: displays the baseband version loaded on this handset.
- **Kernel version**: displays the kernel version loaded on this handset.
- **Build number**: displays the software, build number.
- **SELinux status**: displays the status of SELinux. SELinux is a set of security policies/modules which is applied to the device to improve the overall security.
- **Secure boot status**: displays the status of the Secure boot.

Note: Baseband, kernal and build numbers are usually used for updates to the handset or support. For additional information please contact your service representative.

Software Update

The Software Update feature enables you to use your device to connect to the network and upload any new software directly to your device. The device automatically updates with the latest available software when you access this option.

The following icons show your Bluetooth connection status at a glance:

Displays when the Software updated feature is active.

Displays when the Software update feature is in progress.

To update your device:

1. From the Home screen, tap (**Apps**) ➔ **Settings** ➔ (**More** tab) ➔ **About device** ➔ **Software update**.
2. Read the Software update information screen.
3. Select an available option:

Note: You configure the device's software update parameters.

- **Cancel**: Tap this option to cancel the operation.
- **Wi-Fi settings**: Enable this option to only download available updates via an active Wi-Fi connection. If disabled, the device will begin available downloads via its' metroPCS connection.
- **OK**: Tap this option to connect to the remote server, detect if there is an available update, then begin the download over your existing data connection.

Note: Software updates can include bug fixes, enhancements to services, to the device or currently installed software.

This device is capable of operating in Wi-Fi™ mode in the 2.4 and 5 GHz bands. The FCC requires that devices operating within 5.15-5.25 GHz may only be used indoors, not outside, in order to avoid interference with Mobile Satellite Services (MSS). Therefore, this device is restricted from being used outdoors when operating in frequencies between 5.15-5.25 GHz.

This section outlines the safety precautions associated with using your phone. The terms “mobile device” or “cell phone” are used in this section to refer to your phone. **Read this information before using your mobile device**.

Exposure to Radio Frequency (RF) Signals

The U.S. Food and Drug Administration (FDA) has published information for consumers relating to Radio Frequency (RF) exposure from wireless phones. The FDA publication includes the following information:

Do cell phones pose a health hazard?

Many people are concerned that cell phone radiation will cause cancer or other serious health hazards. The weight of scientific evidence has not linked cell phones with any health problems.

Cell phones emit low levels of Radio Frequency (RF) energy. Over the past 15 years, scientists have conducted hundreds of studies looking at the biological effects of the radio frequency energy emitted by cell phones. While some researchers have reported biological changes associated with RF energy, these studies have failed to be replicated. The majority of studies published have failed to show an association between exposure to radio frequency from a cell phone and health problems.

The low levels of RF cell phones emit while in use are in the microwave frequency range. They also emit RF at substantially reduced time intervals when in the stand-by mode. Whereas high levels of RF can produce health effects (by heating tissue), exposure to low level RF that does not produce heating effects causes no known adverse health effects.

The biological effects of radio frequency energy should not be confused with the effects from other types of electromagnetic energy.

Very high levels of electromagnetic energy, such as is found in X-rays and gamma rays, can ionize biological tissues. Ionization is a process where electrons are stripped away from their normal locations in atoms and molecules. It can permanently damage biological tissues including DNA, the genetic material.

The energy levels associated with radio frequency energy, including both radio waves and microwaves, are not great enough to cause ionization of atoms and molecules. Therefore, RF energy is a type of non-ionizing radiation. Other types of non-ionizing radiation include visible light, infrared radiation (heat), and other forms of electromagnetic radiation with relatively low frequencies.

While RF energy does not ionize particles, large amounts can increase body temperatures and cause tissue damage. Two areas of the body, the eyes and the testes, are particularly vulnerable to RF heating because there is relatively little blood flow in them to carry away excess heat.

Research Results to Date: Is there a connection between RF and certain health problems?

The results of most studies conducted to date say no. In addition, attempts to replicate and confirm the few studies that have shown a connection have failed.

The scientific community at large therefore believes that the weight of scientific evidence does not show an association between exposure to Radio Frequency (RF) from cell phones and adverse health outcomes. Still the scientific community has supported additional research to address gaps in knowledge. Some of these studies are described below.

Interphone Study

Interphone is a large international study designed to determine whether cell phones increase the risk of head and neck cancer. A report published in the International Journal of Epidemiology (June, 2010) compared cell phone usage for more than 5,000 people with brain tumors (glioma and meningioma) and a similar number of healthy controls.

Results of this study did NOT show that cell phones caused brain cancer. In this study, most people had no increased risk of brain cancer from using cell phones. For people with the heaviest use of cell phones (an average of more than ½ hour per day, every day, for over 10 years) the study suggested a

slight increase in brain cancer. However, the authors determined that biases and errors prevented any conclusions being drawn from this data. Additional information about Interphone can be found at http://www.iarc.fr/en/media-centre/pr/2010/pdfs/pr200_E.pdf.

Interphone is the largest cell phone study to date, but it did not answer all questions about cell phone safety. Additional research is being conducted around the world, and the FDA continues to monitor developments in this field.

International Cohort Study on Mobile Phone Users (COSMOS)

The COSMOS study aims to conduct long-term health monitoring of a large group of people to determine if there are any health issues linked to long-term exposure to radio frequency energy from cell phone use. The COSMOS study will follow approximately 300,000 adult cell phone users in Europe for 20 to 30 years. Additional information about the COSMOS study can be found at http://www.ukcosmos.org/index.html.

Risk of Brain Cancer from Exposure to Radio Frequency Fields in Childhood and Adolescence (MOBI-KIDS)

MOBI-KIDS is an international study investigating the relationship between exposure to radio frequency energy from communication technologies including cell phones and brain cancer in young people. This is an international multi-center study involving 14 European and non-European countries. Additional information about MOBI-KIDS can be found at http://www.creal.cat/programes-recerca/en_projectes-creal/view.php?ID=39.

Surveillance, Epidemiology, and End Results (SEER) Program of the National Cancer Institute

The National Cancer Institute (NCI) actively follows cancer statistics in the United States to detect any change in rates of new cases for brain cancer. If cell phones play a role in risk for brain cancer, rates should go up, because heavy cell phone use has been common for quite some time in the U.S. Between 1987 and 2005, the overall age-adjusted incidence of brain cancer did not increase. Additional information about SEER can be found at http://seer.cancer.gov/.

Cell Phone Industry Actions

Although the existing scientific data do not justify FDA regulatory actions, the FDA has urged the cell phone industry to take a number of steps, including the following:

- Support-needed research on possible biological effects of RF for the type of signal emitted by cell phones;
- Design cell phones in a way that minimizes any RF exposure to the user; and
- Cooperate in providing users of cell phones with the current information on cell phone use and human health concerns.

The FDA also is working with voluntary standard-setting bodies such as the Institute of Electrical and Electronics Engineers (IEEE), the International Commission on Non-Ionizing Radiation Protection (ICNIRP), and others to assure that safety standards continue to adequately protect the public.

Reducing Exposure: Hands-Free Kits and Other Accessories

Steps to Reduce Exposure to Radio Frequency Energy

If there is a risk from being exposed to radio frequency energy (RF) from cell phones - and at this point we do not know that there is - it is probably very small. But, if you are concerned about avoiding even potential risks, you can take a few simple steps to minimize your RF exposure.

- Reduce the amount of time spent using your cell phone;
- Use speaker mode or a headset to place more distance between your head and the cell phone.

Hands-Free Kits

Hands-free kits may include audio or Bluetooth® headsets and various types of body-worn accessories such as belt-clips and holsters. Combinations of these can be used to reduce RF energy absorption from cell phones.

Headsets can substantially reduce exposure because the phone is held away from the head in the user's hand or in approved body-worn accessories. Cell phones marketed in the U.S. are required to meet RF exposure compliance requirements when used against the head and against the body.

Because there are no known risks from exposure to RF emissions from cell phones, there is no reason to believe that hands-free kits reduce risks. Hands-free kits can be used for convenience and comfort. They are also required by law in many states if you want to use your phone while driving.

Cell Phone Accessories that Claim to Shield the Head from RF Radiation

Because there are no known risks from exposure to RF emissions from cell phones, there is no reason to believe that accessories which claim to shield the head from those emissions reduce risks. Some products that claim to shield the user from RF absorption use special phone cases, while others involve nothing more than a metallic accessory attached to the phone.

Studies have shown that these products generally do not work as advertised. Unlike “hands-free” kits, these so-called “shields” may interfere with proper operation of the phone. The phone may be forced to boost its power to compensate, leading to an increase in RF absorption.

Children and Cell Phones

The scientific evidence does not show a danger to any users of cell phones from RF exposure, including children and teenagers. The steps adults can take to reduce RF exposure apply to children and teenagers as well.

- Reduce the amount of time spent on the cell phone;
- Use speaker mode or a headset to place more distance between the head and the cell phone.

Some groups sponsored by other national governments have advised that children be discouraged from using cell phones at all. For example, The Stewart Report from the United Kingdom made such a recommendation in December 2000. In this report, a group of independent experts noted that no evidence exists that using a cell phone causes brain tumors or other ill effects. Their recommendation to limit cell phone use by children was strictly precautionary; it was not based on scientific evidence that any health hazard exists.

Additional information on the safety of RF exposures from various sources can be obtained from the following organizations (updated 10/1/2010):

- FCC RF Safety Program: http://www.fcc.gov/oet/rfsafety/.

- Environmental Protection Agency (EPA): http://www.epa.gov/radtown/wireless-tech.html.
- Occupational Safety and Health Administration (OSHA): http://www.osha.gov/SLTC/radiofrequencyradiation/. (Note: This web address is case sensitive.)
- National Institute for Occupational Safety and Health (NIOSH): http://www.cdc.gov/niosh/.
- World Health Organization (WHO): http://www.who.int/peh-emf/en/.
- International Commission on Non-Ionizing Radiation Protection: http://www.icnirp.de.
- Health Protection Agency: http://www.hpa.org.uk/Topics/Radiation/.
- US Food and Drug Administration: http://www.fda.gov/Radiation-EmittingProducts/RadiationEmittingProductsandProcedures/HomeBusinessandEntertainment/CellPhones/default.htm.

Specific Absorption Rate (SAR) Certification Information

Your wireless phone is a radio transmitter and receiver. It is designed and manufactured not to exceed the exposure limits for Radio Frequency (RF) energy set by the Federal Communications Commission (FCC) of the U.S. Government.

These FCC RF exposure limits are derived from the recommendations of two expert organizations: the National Council on Radiation Protection and Measurement (NCRP) and the Institute of Electrical and Electronics Engineers (IEEE). In both cases, the recommendations were developed by scientific and engineering experts drawn from industry, government, and academia after extensive reviews of the scientific literature related to the biological effects of RF energy.

The RF exposure limit set by the FCC for wireless mobile phones employs a unit of measurement known as the Specific Absorption Rate (SAR). The SAR is a measure of the rate of absorption of RF energy by the human body expressed in units of watts per kilogram (W/kg). The FCC requires wireless phones to comply with a safety limit of 1.6 watts per kilogram (1.6 W/kg).

The FCC SAR limit incorporates a substantial margin of safety to give additional protection to the public and to account for any variations in measurements.

SAR tests are conducted using standard operating positions accepted by the FCC with the phone transmitting at its highest certified power level in all tested frequency bands. Although the SAR is determined at the highest certified power level, the actual SAR level of the phone while operating can be well below the maximum reported value. This is because the phone is designed to operate at multiple power levels so as to use only the power required to reach the network. In general, the closer you are to a wireless base station antenna, the lower the power output of the phone.

Before a new model phone is available for sale to the public, it must be tested and certified to the FCC that it does not exceed the SAR limit established by the FCC. Tests for each model phone are performed in positions and locations (e.g. at the ear and worn on the body) as required by the FCC. For body-worn operation, this phone has been tested and meets FCC RF exposure guidelines when used with an accessory that contains no metal and that positions the mobile device a minimum of 1.0 cm from the body.

Use of other accessories may not ensure compliance with FCC RF exposure guidelines. The FCC has granted an Equipment Authorization for this mobile device with all reported SAR levels evaluated as in compliance with the FCC RF exposure guidelines.

This [mobile phone/tablet/device] has a FCC ID number: A3LSGHM819N [Model Number: SGH-M819N and the specific SAR levels for this [mobile phone/tablet/device] can be found at the following FCC website: http://www.fcc.gov/oet/ea/.

The SAR information for this device can also be found on Samsung's website: http://www.samsung.com/sar.

SAR information on this and other model phones can be accessed online on the FCC's website through http://transition.fcc.gov/oet/rfsafety/sar.html. To find information that pertains to a particular model phone, this site uses the phone FCC ID number which is usually printed somewhere on the case of the phone. Sometimes it may be necessary to remove the battery pack to find the number. Once you have the FCC ID number for a particular phone, follow the instructions on the website and it should provide values for typical or maximum SAR for a particular phone. Additional

SAR information can also be obtained at http://www.fcc.gov/encyclopedia/specific-absorption-rate-sar-cellular-telephones.

FCC Part 15 Information to User

Pursuant to part 15.21 of the FCC Rules, you are cautioned that changes or modifications not expressly approved by Samsung could void your authority to operate the device.

This device complies with part 15 of the FCC Rules. Operation is subject to the following two conditions: (1) This device may not cause harmful interference, and (2) this device must accept any interference received, including interference that may cause undesired operation.

Note: This equipment has been tested and found to comply with the limits for a Class B digital device, pursuant to part 15 of the FCC Rules. These limits are designed to provide reasonable protection against harmful interference in a residential installation. This equipment generates, uses and can radiate radio frequency energy and, if not installed and used in accordance with the instructions, may cause harmful interference to radio communications.

However, there is no guarantee that interference will not occur in a particular installation. If this equipment does cause harmful interference to radio or television reception, which can be determined by turning the equipment off and on, the user is encouraged to try to correct the interference by one or more of the following measures:

- Reorient or relocate the receiving antenna.
- Increase the separation between the equipment and receiver.
- Connect the equipment into an outlet on a circuit different from that to which the receiver is connected.
- Consult the dealer or an experienced radio/TV technician for help.

Commercial Mobile Alerting System (CMAS)

This device is designed to receive wireless emergency alerts from the Commercial Mobile Alerting System ("CMAS"; which may also be known as the Personal Localized Alerting Network ("PLAN")). If your wireless provider has chosen to participate in CMAS/PLAN, alerts are available while in the provider's coverage area. If you travel outside your provider's coverage area, wireless emergency alerts may not be available. For more information, please contact your wireless provider.

Smart Practices While Driving

On the Road - Off the Phone

The primary responsibility of every driver is the safe operation of his or her vehicle.

Responsible drivers understand that no secondary task should be performed while driving whether it be eating, drinking, talking to passengers, or talking on a mobile phone - unless the driver has assessed the driving conditions and is confident that the secondary task will not interfere with their primary responsibility. **Do not engage in any activity while driving a moving vehicle which may cause you to take your eyes off the road or become so absorbed in the activity that your ability to concentrate on the act of driving becomes impaired**. Samsung is committed to promoting responsible driving and giving drivers the tools they need to understand and address distractions.

Check the laws and regulations on the use of mobile devices and their accessories in the areas where you drive. Always obey them. The use of these devices may be prohibited or restricted in certain areas. For example, only hands-free use may be permitted in certain areas.

Before answering calls, consider your circumstances. Let the call go to voicemail when driving conditions require. Remember, driving comes first, not the call!

If you consider a call necessary and appropriate, follow these tips:

- Use a hands-free device;
- Secure your phone within easy reach;
- Place calls when you are not moving;
- Plan calls when your car will be stationary;
- Do not engage in stressful or emotional conversations;
- Let the person with whom you are speaking know that you are driving and will suspend the call if necessary;
- Do not take notes or look up phone numbers while driving;

Notice regarding legal restrictions on mounting this device in an automobile:

Laws in some states may prohibit mounting this device on or near the windshield of an automobile. In other states, the law may permit mounting this device only in specific locations in the automobile. Be sure to consult the state and local laws or ordinances where you drive before mounting this device in an automobile. Failure to comply with these restrictions could result in fines, penalties, or other damages.

Never mount this device in a manner that will obstruct the driver's clear view of the street and traffic.

Never use wireless data services such as text messaging, Web browsing, or e-mail while operating a vehicle.

Never watch videos, such as a movie or clip, or play video games while operating a vehicle.

For more information, go to http://www.ctia.org.

Battery Use and Safety

Important! Handle and store batteries properly to avoid injury or damage. Most battery issues arise from improper handling of batteries and, particularly, from the continued use of damaged batteries.

- **Do not disassemble, crush, puncture, shred, or otherwise attempt to change the form of your battery**. Do not put a high degree of pressure on the battery. This can cause leakage or an internal short-circuit, resulting in overheating.
- **Do not let the phone or battery come in contact with liquids.** Liquids can get into the phone's circuits, leading to corrosion. Even when the phone appears to be dry and appears to operate normally, the circuitry could slowly corrode and pose a safety hazard. If the phone and/or battery get wet, have them checked by your service provider or contact Samsung, even if they appear to be working properly.
- **Do not place your battery in or near a heat source**. Excessive heating can damage the phone or the battery and could cause the phone or the battery to explode. Do not dry a wet or damp battery with an appliance or heat source such as a microwave oven, hair dryer, iron, or radiator. Avoid leaving your phone in your car in high temperatures.
- **Do not dispose of the phone or the battery in a fire**. The phone or the battery may explode when overheated.
- **Do not handle a damaged or leaking battery**. Do not let leaking battery fluid come in contact with your eyes, skin or clothing. For safe disposal options, contact your nearest Samsung-authorized service center.

- **Avoid dropping the cell phone**. Dropping the phone or the battery, especially on a hard surface, can potentially cause damage to the phone and battery. If you suspect damage to the phone or battery, take it to a service center for inspection.
- **Never use any charger or battery that is damaged in any way**.
- **Do not allow the battery to touch metal objects**. Accidental short-circuiting can occur when a metallic object (coin, key, jewelry, clip, or pen) causes a direct connection between the + and - terminals of the battery (metal strips on the battery), for example when you carry a spare battery in a pocket or bag. Short-circuiting the terminals may damage the battery or the object causing the short-circuiting.

Important! Use only Samsung-approved batteries, and recharge your battery only with Samsung-approved chargers which are specifically designed for your phone.

WARNING!

Use of a non-Samsung-approved battery or charger may present a risk of fire, explosion, leakage, or other hazard. Samsung's warranty does not cover damage to the phone caused by non-Samsung-approved batteries and/or chargers.

- **Do not use incompatible cell phone batteries and chargers**. Some websites and second-hand dealers not associated with reputable manufacturers and carriers, might be selling incompatible or even counterfeit batteries and chargers. Consumers should purchase manufacturer or carrier-recommended products and accessories. If unsure about whether a replacement battery or charger is compatible, contact the manufacturer of the battery or charger.
- **Misuse or use of incompatible phones, batteries, and charging devices could result in damage to the equipment and a possible risk of fire, explosion, or leakage, leading to serious injuries, damages to your phone, or other serious hazard**.

Samsung Mobile Products and Recycling

Samsung cares for the environment and encourages its customers to recycle Samsung mobile devices and genuine Samsung accessories.

Proper disposal of your mobile device and its battery is not only important for safety, it benefits the environment. Batteries must be recycled or disposed of properly.

Recycling programs for your mobile device, batteries, and accessories may not be available in your area.

We've made it easy for you to recycle your old Samsung mobile device by working with respected take-back companies in every state in the country.

Drop It Off

You can drop off your Samsung-branded mobile device and batteries for recycling at one of our numerous Samsung Recycling Direct (SM) locations. A list of these locations may be found at:

http://pages.samsung.com/us/recyclingdirect/usactivities_environment_samsungrecyclingdirect_locations.jsp

.

Samsung-branded devices and batteries will be accepted at these locations for no fee.

Consumers may also recycle their used mobile device or batteries at many retail or carrier-provided locations where mobile devices and batteries are sold. Additional information regarding specific locations may be found at:

http://www.epa.gov/epawaste/partnerships/plugin/cellphone/index.htm or at http://www.call2recycle.org/.

Mail It In

The Samsung Mobile Take-Back Program will provide Samsung customers with a free recycling mailing label. Just go to http://fun.samsungmobileusa.com/recycling/index.jsp.

Dispose of unwanted electronics through an approved recycler.

To find the nearest recycling location, go to our website:

www.samsung.com/recyclingdirect

Or call, (877) 278-0799.

Follow local regulations regarding disposal of mobile devices and batteries

Dispose of your mobile device and batteries in accordance with local regulations. In some areas, the disposal of these items in household or business trash may be prohibited. Help us protect the environment - recycle!

Warning! Never dispose of batteries in a fire because they may explode.

UL Certified Travel Charger

The Travel Charger for this phone has met applicable UL safety requirements. Please adhere to the following safety instructions per UL guidelines:

FAILURE TO FOLLOW THE INSTRUCTIONS OUTLINED MAY LEAD TO SERIOUS PERSONAL INJURY AND POSSIBLE PROPERTY DAMAGE.

IMPORTANT SAFETY INSTRUCTIONS - SAVE THESE INSTRUCTIONS.

DANGER - TO REDUCE THE RISK OF FIRE OR ELECTRIC SHOCK, CAREFULLY FOLLOW THESE INSTRUCTIONS.

FOR CONNECTION TO A SUPPLY NOT IN NORTH AMERICA, USE AN ATTACHMENT PLUG ADAPTOR OF THE PROPER CONFIGURATION FOR THE POWER OUTLET.

THIS POWER UNIT IS INTENDED TO BE CORRECTLY ORIENTED IN A VERTICAL OR HORIZONTAL OR FLOOR MOUNT POSITION.

Display / Touch-Screen

Please note the following information when using your mobile device:

WARNING REGARDING DISPLAY

The display on your mobile device is made of glass or acrylic and could break if your mobile device is dropped or if it receives significant impact. Do not use if screen is broken or cracked as this could cause injury to you.

WARRANTY DISCLAIMER: PROPER USE OF A TOUCH-SCREEN MOBILE DEVICE

If your mobile device has a touch-screen display, please note that a touch-screen responds best to a light touch from the pad of your finger or a non-metallic stylus. Using excessive force or a metallic object when pressing on the touch-screen may damage the tempered glass surface and void the warranty. For more information, please refer to the "Standard Limited Warranty".

GPS

Certain Samsung mobile devices can use a Global Positioning System (GPS) signal for location-based applications. A GPS uses satellites controlled by the U.S. Government that are subject to changes implemented in accordance with the Department of Defense policy and the 2008 Federal Radio navigation Plan (FRP). Changes may affect the performance of location-based technology on your mobile device.

Even with GPS, when you make an emergency call:

- Always tell the emergency responder your location to the best of your ability; and
- Remain on the mobile device for as long as the emergency responder instructs you.

Navigation

Maps, directions, and other navigation-data, including data relating to your current location, may contain inaccurate or incomplete data, and circumstances can and do change over time. In some areas, complete information may not be available. **Therefore, you should always visually confirm that the navigational instructions are consistent with what you see before following them. All users should pay attention to road conditions, closures, traffic, and all other factors that may impact safe driving or walking. Always obey posted road signs.**

Emergency Calls

This mobile device, like any wireless mobile device, operates using radio signals, wireless and landline networks, as well as user-programmed functions, which cannot guarantee connection in all conditions, areas, or circumstances.

Therefore, you should never rely solely on any wireless mobile device for essential communications (medical emergencies, for example). Before traveling in remote or underdeveloped areas, plan an alternate method of contacting emergency services personnel. Remember, to make or receive any calls, the mobile device must be switched on and in a service area with adequate signal strength.

Emergency calls may not be possible on all wireless mobile device networks or when certain network services and/or mobile device features are in use. Check with local service providers.

To make an emergency call:

1. If the mobile device is not on, switch it on.
2. From the Home screen, tap .
3. Key in the emergency number for your present location (for example, 911 or other official emergency number). Emergency numbers vary by location.
4. Tap .

If certain features are in use (call blocking, for example), you may first need to deactivate those features before you can make an emergency call. Consult your User Manual and your local cellular service provider. When making an emergency call, remember to give all the necessary information as accurately as possible. Remember that your mobile device may be the only means of communication at the scene of an accident; do not cut off the call until given permission to do so.

Care and Maintenance

Your mobile device is a product of superior design and craftsmanship and should be treated with care. The suggestions below will help you fulfill any warranty obligations and allow you to enjoy this product for many years:

Keep your Samsung Mobile Device away from:

Liquids of any kind

Keep the mobile device dry. Precipitation, humidity, and liquids contain minerals that will corrode electronic circuits. If the mobile device does get wet, do not accelerate drying with the use of an oven, microwave, or dryer, because this may damage the mobile device and could cause a fire or explosion.

Do not use the mobile device with a wet hand. Doing so may cause an electric shock to you or damage to the mobile device.

Extreme heat or cold

Avoid temperatures below 0°C / 32°F or above 45°C / 113°F.

Microwaves

Do not try to dry your mobile device in a microwave oven. Doing so may cause a fire or explosion.

Dust and dirt

Do not expose your mobile device to dust, dirt, or sand.

Cleaning solutions

Do not use harsh chemicals, cleaning solvents, or strong detergents to clean the mobile device. Wipe it with a soft cloth slightly dampened in a mild soap-and-water solution. If the mobile device has a retractable camera lens, do not use soap and water to clean the lens. Use a blower or brush or lens cleaning paper dampened in a lens cleaning solution.

Shock or vibration

Do not drop, knock, or shake the mobile device. Rough handling can break internal circuit boards.

Paint

Do not paint the mobile device. Paint can clog the device's moving parts or ventilation openings and prevent proper operation.

Responsible Listening

Caution! Avoid potential hearing loss.

Damage to hearing occurs when a person is exposed to loud sounds over time. The risk of hearing loss increases as sound is played louder and for longer durations. Prolonged exposure to loud sounds (including music) is the most common cause of preventable hearing loss. Some scientific research suggests that using portable audio devices, such as portable music players and cell phones, at high volume settings for long durations may lead to permanent noise-induced hearing loss.

This includes the use of headphones (including headsets, earbuds, and Bluetooth® or other wireless devices). Exposure to very loud sound has also been associated in some studies with tinnitus (a ringing in the ear), hypersensitivity to sound, and distorted hearing. Individual susceptibility to noise-induced hearing loss and potential hearing problem varies. Additionally, the amount of sound produced by a portable audio device varies depending on the nature of the sound, the device settings, and the headphones

that are used. As a result, there is no single volume setting that is appropriate for everyone or for every combination of sound, settings, and equipment.

You should follow some common sense recommendations when using any portable audio device:

- Always turn the volume down before plugging the earphones into an audio source.
- Set the volume in a quiet environment and select the lowest volume at which you can hear adequately.
- Be aware that you can adapt to higher volume settings over time, not realizing that the higher volume may be harmful to your hearing.
- When using headphones, turn the volume down if you cannot hear the people speaking near you or if the person sitting next to you can hear what you are listening to.
- Do not turn the volume up to block out noisy surroundings. If you choose to listen to your portable device in a noisy environment, use noise-cancelling headphones to block out background environmental noise. By blocking background environment noise, noise cancelling headphones should allow you to hear the music at lower volumes than when using earbuds.
- Limit the amount of time you listen. As the volume increases, less time is required before you hearing could be affected.
- Avoid using headphones after exposure to extremely loud noises, such as rock concerts, that might cause temporary hearing loss. Temporary hearing loss might cause unsafe volumes to sound normal.
- Do not listen at any volume that causes you discomfort. If you experience ringing in your ears, hear muffled speech, or experience any temporary hearing difficulty after listening to your portable audio device, discontinue use and consult your doctor.

You can obtain additional information on this subject from the following sources:

American Academy of Audiology

11730 Plaza American Drive, Suite 300
Reston, VA 20190

Voice: (800) 222-2336
Email: info@audiology.org

Internet:
http://www.audiology.org/Pages/default.aspx

National Institute on Deafness and Other Communication Disorders

National Institutes of Health
31 Center Drive, MSC 2320
Bethesda, MD 20892-2320

Email: nidcdinfo@nih.gov

Internet:
http://www.nidcd.nih.gov/

National Institute for Occupational Safety and Health (NIOSH)

395 E Street, S.W., Suite 9200
Patriots Plaza Building
Washington, DC 20201

Voice: 1-800-35-NIOSH
(1-800-356-4674)
1-800-CDC-INFO (1-800-232-4636)
Outside the U.S. 513-533-8328

Email: cdcinfo@cdc.gov

Internet:
http://www.cdc.gov/niosh/topics/noise/default.html

1-888-232-6348 TTY

Operating Environment

Remember to follow any special regulations in force in any area, and always switch your mobile device off whenever it is forbidden to use it, or when it may cause interference or danger. When connecting the mobile device or any accessory to another device, read its user's guide for detailed safety instructions. Do not connect incompatible products.

Using Your Mobile Device Near Other Electronic Devices

Most modern electronic equipment is shielded from Radio Frequency (RF) signals. However, certain electronic equipment may not be shielded against the RF signals from your wireless mobile device. Consult the manufacturer to discuss alternatives.

Implantable Medical Devices

A minimum separation of six (6) inches should be maintained between a handheld wireless mobile device and an implantable medical device, such as a pacemaker or implantable cardioverter defibrillator, to avoid potential interference with the device.

Persons who have such devices:

- Should ALWAYS keep the mobile device more than six (6) inches from their implantable medical device when the mobile device is turned ON;
- Should not carry the mobile device in a breast pocket;
- Should use the ear opposite the implantable medical device to minimize the potential for interference;
- Should turn the mobile device OFF immediately if there is any reason to suspect that interference is taking place;
- Should read and follow the directions from the manufacturer of your implantable medical device. If you have any questions about using your wireless mobile device with an implantable medical device, consult your health care provider.

For more information see: http://www.fcc.gov/oet/rfsafety/rf-faqs.html#.

Other Medical Devices

If you use any other personal medical devices, consult the manufacturer of your device to determine if it is adequately shielded from external RF energy. Your physician may be able to assist you in obtaining this information. Switch your mobile device off in health care facilities when any regulations posted in these areas instruct you to do so. Hospitals or health care facilities may be using equipment that could be sensitive to external RF energy.

Vehicles

RF signals may affect improperly installed or inadequately shielded electronic systems in motor vehicles. Check with the manufacturer or its representative regarding your vehicle before using your mobile device in a motor vehicle. You should also consult the manufacturer of any equipment that has been added to your vehicle.

Posted Facilities

Switch your mobile device off in any facility where posted notices require you to do so.

Potentially Explosive Environments

Switch your mobile device off when in any area with a potentially explosive atmosphere and obey all signs and instructions. Sparks in such areas could cause an explosion

or fire resulting in bodily injury or even death. Users are advised to switch the mobile device off while at a refueling point (service station).

Users are reminded of the need to observe restrictions on the use of radio equipment in fuel depots (fuel storage and distribution areas), chemical plants, or where blasting operations are in progress. Areas with a potentially explosive atmosphere are often, but not always, clearly marked. They include below deck on boats, chemical transfer or storage facilities, vehicles using liquefied petroleum gas (such as propane or butane), areas where the air contains chemicals or particles, such as grain, dust, or metal powders, and any other area where you would normally be advised to turn off your vehicle engine. Vehicles using liquefied petroleum gas (such as propane or butane) must comply with the National Fire Protection Standard (NFPA-58). For a copy of this standard, contact the National Fire Protection Association.

When your Device is Wet

Do not turn on your device if it is wet. If your device is already on, turn it off and remove the battery immediately (if the device will not turn off or you cannot remove the battery, leave it as-is). Then, dry the device with a towel and take it to a service center.

FCC Hearing Aid Compatibility (HAC) Regulations for Wireless Devices

The U.S. Federal Communications Commission (FCC) has established requirements for digital wireless mobile devices to be compatible with hearing aids and other assistive hearing devices.

When individuals employing some assistive hearing devices (hearing aids and cochlear implants) use wireless mobile devices, they may detect a buzzing, humming, or whining noise. Some hearing devices are more immune than others to this interference noise, and mobile devices also vary in the amount of interference they generate.

The wireless telephone industry has developed a rating system for wireless mobile devices to assist hearing device users find mobile devices that may be compatible with their hearing devices. Not all mobile devices have been rated. Mobile devices that are rated have the rating on their box or a label located on the box.

The ratings are not guarantees. Results will vary depending on the user's hearing device and hearing loss. If your hearing device happens to be vulnerable to interference, you may not

be able to use a rated mobile device successfully. Trying out the mobile device with your hearing device is the best way to evaluate it for your personal needs.

M-Ratings: Wireless mobile devices rated M3 or M4 meet FCC requirements and are likely to generate less interference to hearing devices than mobile devices that are not labeled. M4 is the better/higher of the two ratings. M-ratings refer to enabling acoustic coupling with hearing aids that do not operate in telecoil mode.

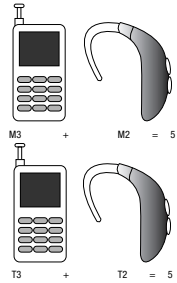
T-Ratings: Mobile devices rated T3 or T4 meet FCC requirements and are likely to generate less interference to hearing devices than mobile devices that are not labeled. T4 is the better/higher of the two ratings. T-ratings refer to enabling inductive coupling with hearing aids operating in telecoil mode.

Hearing devices may also be rated. Your hearing aid manufacturer or hearing health professional may help you find this rating. Higher ratings mean that the hearing device is relatively immune to interference noise.

Under the current industry standard, American National Standards Institute (ANSI) C63.19, the hearing aid and wireless mobile device rating values are added together to indicate how usable they are together. For example, if a hearing aid meets the M2 level rating and the wireless mobile device meets the M3 level rating, the sum of the two values equals M5.

Under the standard, this should provide the hearing aid user with normal use while using the hearing aid with the particular wireless mobile device. A sum of 6 or more would indicate excellent performance.

However, these are not guarantees that all users will be satisfied. T ratings work similarly.



The HAC rating and measurement procedure are described in the American National Standards Institute (ANSI) C63.19 standard.

HAC for Newer Technologies

This phone has been tested and rated for use with hearing aids for some of the wireless technologies that it uses. However, there may be some newer wireless technologies used in this phone that have not been tested yet for use with hearing aids.

It is important to try the different features of this phone thoroughly and in different locations, using your hearing aid or cochlear implant, to determine if you hear any interfering noise. Consult your service provider or the manufacturer of this phone for information on hearing aid compatibility. If you have questions about return or exchange policies, consult your service provider or phone retailer.

Restricting Children's Access to Your Mobile Device

Your mobile device is not a toy. Do not allow children to play with it because they could hurt themselves and others, damage the mobile device, or make calls that increase your mobile device bill.

Keep the mobile device and all its parts and accessories out of the reach of small children.

FCC Notice and Cautions

FCC Notice

The mobile device may cause TV or radio interference if used in close proximity to receiving equipment. The FCC can require you to stop using the mobile device if such interference cannot be eliminated.

Cautions

Any changes or modifications to your mobile device not expressly approved by Samsung could void your warranty for this equipment and void your authority to operate this equipment. Only use approved batteries, antennas, and chargers. The use of any unauthorized accessories may be dangerous and void the mobile device warranty if said accessories cause damage or a defect to the mobile device.

Although your mobile device is quite sturdy, it is a complex piece of equipment and can be broken. Avoid dropping, hitting, bending, or sitting on it.

Other Important Safety Information

- Only qualified personnel should service the mobile device or install the mobile device in a vehicle. Faulty installation or service may be dangerous and may invalidate any warranty applicable to the device.

- Ensure that any mobile devices or related equipment installed in your vehicle are securely mounted.
- Check regularly that all wireless mobile device equipment in your vehicle is mounted and operating properly.
- When using a headset in dry environments, static electricity can build up in the headset and cause a small quick static electrical shock. To minimize the risk of electrostatic discharge from the headset avoid using the headset in extremely dry environments or touch a grounded unpainted metal object to discharge static electricity before inserting the headset.
- Do not store or carry flammable liquids, gases, or explosive materials in the same compartment as the mobile device, its parts, or accessories.
- For vehicles equipped with an air bag, remember that an air bag inflates with great force. Do not place objects, including installed or portable wireless equipment near or in the area over the air bag or in the air bag deployment area. If wireless equipment is improperly installed and the air bag inflates, serious injury could result.
- Switch your mobile device off before boarding an aircraft. The use of wireless mobile devices in aircraft is illegal and may be dangerous to the aircraft's operation. Check with appropriate authorities before using any function of a mobile device while on an aircraft.
- Failure to observe these instructions may lead to the suspension or denial of cell phone services to the offender, or legal action, or both.
- While using your device, leave some lights on in the room and do not hold the screen too close to your eyes.
- Seizures or blackouts can occur when you are exposed to flashing lights while watching videos or playing games for extended periods. If you feel any discomfort, stop using the device immediately.
- Reduce risk of repetitive motion injuries. When you repetitively perform actions, such as pressing keys, drawing characters on a touch screen with your fingers, or playing games, you may experience occasional discomfort in your hands, neck, shoulders, or other parts of your body. When using your device for extended periods, hold the device with a relaxed grip, press the keys lightly, and take frequent breaks. If you continue to have discomfort during or after such use, stop use and see a physician.

- If your device has a camera flash or light, do not use the flash or light close to the eyes of people or pets. [122011]

Section 11: Warranty Information

Standard Limited Warranty

What is covered and for how long?

SAMSUNG TELECOMMUNICATIONS AMERICA, LLC ("SAMSUNG") warrants that SAMSUNG's handsets and accessories ("Products") are free from defects in material and workmanship under normal use and service for the period commencing upon the date of purchase by the first consumer purchaser and continuing for the following specified period of time after that date:

Device	1 Year
Battery(ies)*	1 Year
Case/Pouch/Holster*	90 Days
Other Device Accessories*	1 Year

*If applicable.

What is not covered?

This Limited Warranty is conditioned upon proper use of the Product.

This Limited Warranty does not cover: (a) defects or damage resulting from accident, misuse, abnormal use, abnormal conditions, improper storage, exposure to liquid, moisture, dampness, sand or dirt, neglect, or unusual physical, electrical or electromechanical stress; (b) scratches, dents and cosmetic damage, unless caused by SAMSUNG; (c) defects or damage resulting from excessive force or use of a metallic object when pressing on a touch screen; (d) equipment that has the serial number or the enhancement data code removed, defaced, damaged, altered or made illegible; (e) ordinary wear and tear; (f) defects or damage resulting from the use of Product in conjunction or connection with accessories, products, or ancillary/peripheral equipment not furnished or approved by SAMSUNG; (g) defects or damage resulting from improper testing, operation, maintenance, installation, service, or adjustment not furnished or approved by SAMSUNG; (h) defects or damage resulting from external causes such as collision with an object, fire, flooding, dirt, windstorm, lightning, earthquake, exposure to weather conditions, theft, blown fuse, or improper use of any electrical source; (i) defects or damage resulting from cellular signal reception

or transmission, or viruses or other software problems introduced into the Product; or (j) Product used or purchased outside the United States. This Limited Warranty covers batteries only if battery capacity falls below 80% of rated capacity or the battery leaks, and this Limited Warranty does not cover any battery if (i) the battery has been charged by a battery charger not specified or approved by SAMSUNG for charging the battery; (ii) any of the seals on the battery are broken or show evidence of tampering; or (iii) the battery has been used in equipment other than the SAMSUNG phone for which it is specified.

What are SAMSUNG's obligations?

During the applicable warranty period, provided the Product is returned in accordance with the terms of this Limited Warranty, SAMSUNG will repair or replace the Product, at SAMSUNG's sole option, without charge. SAMSUNG may, at SAMSUNG's sole option, use rebuilt, reconditioned, or new parts or components when repairing any Product, or may replace the Product with a rebuilt, reconditioned or new Product.

Repaired/replaced cases, pouches and holsters will be warranted for a period of ninety (90) days. All other repaired/replaced Products will be warranted for a period equal to the remainder of the original Limited Warranty on the original Product or for ninety (90) days, whichever is longer. All replaced Products, parts, components, boards and equipment shall become the property of SAMSUNG. Except to any extent expressly allowed by applicable law, transfer or assignment of this Limited Warranty is prohibited.

What must you do to obtain warranty service?

To obtain service under this Limited Warranty, you must return the Product to an authorized phone service facility in an adequate container for shipping, accompanied by the sales receipt or comparable proof of sale showing the original date of purchase, the serial number of the Product and the seller's name and address.

To obtain assistance on where to deliver the Product, please call SAMSUNG Customer Care at 1-888-987-4357. If SAMSUNG determines that any Product is not covered by this Limited Warranty, you must pay all parts, shipping, and labor charges for the repair or return of such Product.

You should keep a separate backup copy of any contents of the Product before delivering the Product to SAMSUNG for warranty service, as some or all of the contents may be deleted or reformatted during the course of warranty service.

What are the limits on SAMSUNG's liability?

THIS LIMITED WARRANTY SETS OUT THE FULL EXTENT OF SAMSUNG'S RESPONSIBILITIES, AND THE EXCLUSIVE REMEDY REGARDING THE PRODUCTS.

ALL IMPLIED WARRANTIES, INCLUDING WITHOUT LIMITATION, IMPLIED WARRANTIES OF MERCHANTABILITY AND FITNESS FOR A PARTICULAR PURPOSE, ARE LIMITED TO THE DURATION OF THIS LIMITED WARRANTY. IN NO EVENT SHALL SAMSUNG BE LIABLE FOR DAMAGES IN EXCESS OF THE PURCHASE PRICE OF THE PRODUCT OR FOR, WITHOUT LIMITATION, COMMERCIAL LOSS OF ANY SORT; LOSS OF USE, TIME, DATA, REPUTATION, OPPORTUNITY, GOODWILL, PROFITS OR SAVINGS; INCONVENIENCE; INCIDENTAL, SPECIAL, CONSEQUENTIAL OR PUNITIVE DAMAGES; OR DAMAGES ARISING FROM THE USE OR INABILITY TO USE THE PRODUCT. SOME STATES AND JURISDICTIONS DO NOT ALLOW LIMITATIONS ON HOW LONG AN IMPLIED WARRANTY LASTS, OR THE DISCLAIMER OR LIMITATION OF INCIDENTAL OR CONSEQUENTIAL DAMAGES, SO THE ABOVE LIMITATIONS AND DISCLAIMERS MAY NOT APPLY TO YOU.

SAMSUNG MAKES NO WARRANTIES OR REPRESENTATIONS, EXPRESS OR IMPLIED, STATUTORY OR OTHERWISE, AS TO THE QUALITY, CAPABILITIES, OPERATIONS, PERFORMANCE OR SUITABILITY OF ANY THIRD-PARTY SOFTWARE OR EQUIPMENT USED IN CONJUNCTION WITH THE PRODUCT, OR THE ABILITY TO INTEGRATE ANY SUCH SOFTWARE OR EQUIPMENT WITH THE PRODUCT, WHETHER SUCH THIRD-PARTY SOFTWARE OR EQUIPMENT IS INCLUDED WITH THE PRODUCT DISTRIBUTED BY SAMSUNG OR OTHERWISE. RESPONSIBILITY FOR THE QUALITY, CAPABILITIES, OPERATIONS, PERFORMANCE AND SUITABILITY OF ANY SUCH THIRD-PARTY SOFTWARE OR EQUIPMENT RESTS SOLELY WITH THE USER AND THE DIRECT VENDOR, OWNER OR SUPPLIER OF SUCH THIRD-PARTY SOFTWARE OR EQUIPMENT.

Nothing in the Product instructions or information shall be construed to create an express warranty of any kind with respect to the Products. No agent, employee, dealer, representative or reseller is authorized to modify or extend this Limited Warranty or to make binding representations or claims, whether in advertising, presentations or otherwise, on behalf of SAMSUNG regarding the Products or this Limited Warranty.

This Limited Warranty gives you specific legal rights, and you may also have other rights that vary from state to state.

What is the procedure for resolving disputes?

ALL DISPUTES WITH SAMSUNG ARISING IN ANY WAY FROM THIS LIMITED WARRANTY OR THE SALE, CONDITION OR PERFORMANCE OF THE PRODUCTS SHALL BE RESOLVED EXCLUSIVELY THROUGH FINAL AND BINDING ARBITRATION, AND NOT BY A COURT OR JURY.

Any such dispute shall not be combined or consolidated with a dispute involving any other person's or entity's Product or claim, and specifically, without limitation of the foregoing, shall not under any circumstances proceed as part of a class action. The arbitration shall be conducted before a single arbitrator, whose award may not exceed, in form or amount, the relief allowed by the applicable law. The arbitration shall be conducted according to the American Arbitration Association (AAA) Commercial Arbitration Rules applicable to consumer disputes. This arbitration provision is entered pursuant to the Federal Arbitration Act. The laws of the State of Texas, without reference to its choice of laws principles, shall govern the interpretation of the Limited Warranty and all disputes that are subject to this arbitration provision. The arbitrator shall decide all issues of interpretation and application of this arbitration provision and the Limited Warranty.

For any arbitration in which your total damage claims, exclusive of attorney fees and expert witness fees, are $5,000.00 or less ("Small Claim"), the arbitrator may, if you prevail, award your reasonable attorney fees, expert witness fees and costs as part of any award, but may not grant SAMSUNG its attorney fees, expert witness fees or costs unless it is determined that the claim was brought in bad faith. In a Small Claim case, you shall be required to pay no more than half of the total administrative, facility and arbitrator fees, or $50.00 of such fees, whichever is less, and SAMSUNG shall pay the remainder of such fees. Administrative, facility and arbitrator fees for arbitrations in which your total damage claims, exclusive of attorney fees and expert witness fees, exceed $5,000.00 ("Large Claim") shall be determined according to AAA rules. In a Large Claim case, the arbitrator may grant to the prevailing party, or apportion among the parties, reasonable attorney fees, expert witness fees and costs. Judgment may be entered on the arbitrator's award in any court of competent jurisdiction.

This arbitration provision also applies to claims against SAMSUNG's employees, representatives and affiliates if any such claim arises from the Product's sale, condition or performance.

You may opt out of this dispute resolution procedure by providing notice to SAMSUNG no later than 30 calendar days from the date of the first consumer purchaser's purchase of the Product. To opt out, you must send notice by e-mail to optout@sta.samsung.com, with the subject line: "Arbitration Opt Out." You must include in the opt out e-mail (a) your name and address; (b) the date on which the Product was purchased; (c) the Product model name or model number; and (d) the IMEI or MEID or Serial Number, as applicable, if you have it (the IMEI or MEID or Serial Number can be found (i) on the Product box; (ii) on the Product information screen, which can be found under "Settings;" (iii) on a label on the back of the Product beneath the battery, if the battery is removable; and (iv) on the outside of the Product if the battery is not removable). Alternatively, you may opt out by calling 1-888-987-4357 no later than 30 calendar days from the date of the first consumer purchaser's purchase of the Product and providing the same information. These are the only two forms of notice that will be effective to opt out of this dispute resolution procedure. Opting out of this dispute resolution procedure will not affect the coverage of the Limited Warranty in any way, and you will continue to enjoy the benefits of the Limited Warranty.

Severability

If any portion of this Limited Warranty is held to be illegal or unenforceable, such partial illegality or unenforceability shall not affect the enforceability of the remainder of the Limited Warranty.

Precautions for Transfer and Disposal

If data stored on this device is deleted or reformatted using the standard methods, the data only appears to be removed on a superficial level, and it may be possible for someone to retrieve and reuse the data by means of special software.

To avoid unintended information leaks and other problems of this sort, it is recommended that the device be returned to Samsung's Customer Care Center for an Extended File System (EFS) Clear which will eliminate all user memory and return all settings to default settings. Please contact the **Samsung Customer Care Center** for details.

Important! Please provide warranty information (proof of purchase) to Samsung's Customer Care Center in order to provide this service at no charge. If the warranty has expired on the device, charges may apply.

Samsung Telecommunications America, LLC
1301 E. Lookout Drive
Richardson, Texas 75082
Phone: 1-800-SAMSUNG
Phone: 1-888-987-HELP (4357)

No reproduction in whole or in part allowed without prior written approval. Specifications and availability subject to change without notice. [111611]

End User License Agreement for Software

IMPORTANT. READ CAREFULLY: This End User License Agreement ("EULA") is a legal agreement between you (either an individual or a single entity) and Samsung Electronics Co., Ltd. ("Samsung") for software, owned by Samsung and its affiliated companies and its third party suppliers and licensors, that accompanies this EULA, which includes computer software and may include associated media, printed materials, "online" or electronic documentation in connection with your use of this device ("Software").

This device requires the use of preloaded software in its normal operation. BY USING THE DEVICE OR ITS PRELOADED SOFTWARE, YOU ACCEPT THE TERMS OF THIS EULA. IF YOU DO NOT ACCEPT THESE TERMS, DO NOT USE THE DEVICE OR THE SOFTWARE.

1. **GRANT OF LICENSE**. Samsung grants you the following rights provided that you comply with all terms and conditions of this EULA: You may install, use, access, display and run one copy of the Software on the local hard disk(s) or other permanent storage media of one computer and use the Software on a single computer or a mobile device at a time, and you may not make the Software available over a network where it could be used by multiple computers at the same time. You may make one copy of the Software in machine readable form for backup purposes only; provided that the backup copy must include all copyright or other proprietary notices contained on the original.

Certain items of the Software may be subject to open source licenses. The open source license provisions may override some of the terms of this EULA. We make the applicable open source licenses available to you on the Legal Notices section of the Settings menu of your device.

2. **RESERVATION OF RIGHTS AND OWNERSHIP**. Samsung reserves all rights not expressly granted to you in this EULA. The Software is protected by copyright and other intellectual property laws and treaties. Samsung or its suppliers own the title, copyright and other intellectual property rights in the Software. The Software is licensed, not sold.

3. **LIMITATIONS ON END USER RIGHTS**. You may not reverse engineer, decompile, disassemble, or otherwise attempt to discover the source code or algorithms of, the Software (except and only to the extent that such activity is expressly permitted by applicable law not withstanding this limitation), or modify, or disable any features of, the Software, or create derivative works based on the Software. You may not rent, lease, lend, sublicense or provide commercial hosting services with the Software.

4. **CONSENT TO USE OF DATA**. You agree that Samsung and its affiliates may collect and use technical information gathered as part of the product support services related to the Software provided to you, if any, such as IMEI (your device's unique identification number), device number, model name, customer code, access recording, your device's current SW version, MCC (Mobile Country Code), MNC (Mobile Network Code). Samsung and its affiliates may use this information solely to improve their products or to provide customized services or technologies to you and will not disclose this information in a form that personally identifies you. At all times your information will be treated in accordance with Samsung's Privacy Policy, which can be viewed at: http://account.samsung.com/membership/pp.

5. **SOFTWARE UPDATES**. Samsung may provide to you or make available to you updates, upgrades, supplements and add-on components (if any) of the Software, including bug fixes, service upgrades (parts or whole), products or devices, and updates and enhancements to any software previously installed (including entirely new versions), (collectively "Update") after the date you obtain your initial copy of the Software to improve the Software and ultimately enhance your user experience with your device. This EULA applies to all and any component of the Update that Samsung may provide to you or make available to you after the date you obtain your initial copy of the Software, unless we provide other terms along with such Update. To use Software provided through Update, you must first be licensed for the Software identified by Samsung as eligible for the Update. After the Update, you may no longer use the Software that formed the basis for your Update eligibility. The updated Software version may add new functions and, in some limited cases, may delete existing functions.

While the Update will be generally available, in some limited circumstances, the Software updates will only be offered by your network carrier, and such Software updates will be governed by your contractual relationship with your network carrier.

With the "Automatic Update" function enabled (as in the default setting in the System Update menu in the Setting), your device downloads some Updates automatically from time to time. Your device will, however, ask for your consent before installing any Update If you choose to disable the "Automatic Update" function, then you can check the availability of new Updates by clicking on the "Check Update" menu in the Setting. We recommend that you check availability of any new Updates periodically for optimal use of your device. If you want to avoid any use of network data for the Update downloads, then you should choose the "Wi-Fi Only" option in the Setting. (Regardless of the option you choose, the "Automatic Update" function downloads Updates only through Wi-Fi connection.)

6. Some features of the Software may require your device to have access to the internet and may be subject to restrictions imposed by your network or internet provider. Unless your device is connected to the internet through Wi-Fi connection, the Software will access through your mobile network, which may result in additional charges depending on your payment plan. In addition, your enjoyment of some features of the Software may be affected by the suitability and performance of your device hardware or data access.

7. **SOFTWARE TRANSFER**. You may not transfer this EULA or the rights to the Software granted herein to any third party unless it is in connection with the sale of the mobile device which the Software accompanied. In such event, the transfer must include all of the Software (including all component parts, the media and printed materials, any upgrades, this EULA) and you may not retain any copies of the Software. The transfer may not be an indirect transfer, such as a consignment. Prior to the transfer, the end user receiving the Software must agree to all the EULA terms.

8. **EXPORT RESTRICTIONS**. You acknowledge that the Software is subject to export restrictions of various countries. You agree to comply with all applicable international and national laws that apply to the Software, including all the applicable export restriction laws and regulations.

9. **TERMINATION**. This EULA is effective until terminated. Your rights under this License will terminate automatically without notice from Samsung if you fail to comply with any of the

terms and conditions of this EULA. Upon termination of this EULA, you must cease all use of the Software and destroy all copies, full or partial, of the Software.

10. **DISCLAIMER OF WARRANTY**. UNLESS SEPARATELY STATED IN A WRITTEN EXPRESS LIMITED WARRANTY ACCOMPANYING YOUR DEVICE, ALL SOFTWARE PROVIDED BY SAMSUNG WITH THIS MOBILE DEVICE (WHETHER INCLUDED WITH THE DEVICE, DOWNLOADED, OR OTHERWISE OBTAINED) IS PROVIDED "AS IS" AND ON AN "AS AVAILABLE" BASIS, WITHOUT WARRANTIES OF ANY KIND FROM SAMSUNG, EITHER EXPRESS OR IMPLIED. TO THE FULLEST EXTENT POSSIBLE PURSUANT TO APPLICABLE LAW, SAMSUNG DISCLAIMS ALL WARRANTIES EXPRESS, IMPLIED, OR STATUTORY, INCLUDING, BUT NOT LIMITED TO, IMPLIED WARRANTIES OF MERCHANTABILITY, SATISFACTORY QUALITY OR WORKMANLIKE EFFORT, FITNESS FOR A PARTICULAR PURPOSE, RELIABILITY OR AVAILABILITY, ACCURACY, LACK OF VIRUSES, QUIET ENJOYMENT, NON INFRINGEMENT OF THIRD PARTY RIGHTS OR OTHER VIOLATION OF RIGHTS. SOME JURISDICTIONS DO NOT ALLOW EXCLUSIONS OR LIMITATIONS OF IMPLIED WARRANTIES, SO THE ABOVE EXCLUSIONS OR LIMITATIONS MAY NOT APPLY TO YOU. NO ADVICE OR INFORMATION, WHETHER ORAL OR WRITTEN, OBTAINED BY YOU FROM SAMSUNG OR ITS AFFILIATES SHALL BE DEEMED TO ALTER THIS DISCLAIMER BY SAMSUNG OF WARRANTY REGARDING THE SOFTWARE, OR TO CREATE ANY WARRANTY OF ANY SORT FROM SAMSUNG.

11. **THIRD-PARTY APPLICATIONS**. Certain third party applications may be included with, or downloaded to this mobile device. Samsung makes no representations whatsoever about any of these applications. Since Samsung has no control over such applications, you acknowledge and agree that Samsung is not responsible for the availability of such applications and is not responsible or liable for any content, advertising, products, services, or other materials on or available from such applications. You expressly acknowledge and agree that use of third party applications is at your sole risk and that the entire risk of unsatisfactory quality, performance, accuracy and effort is with you. It is up to you to take precautions to ensure that whatever you select to use is free of such items as viruses, worms, Trojan horses, and other items of a destructive nature. References on this mobile device to any names, marks, products, or services of any third-parties are provided solely as a convenience to you, and do not constitute or imply an endorsement, sponsorship, or recommendation of, or affiliation with the third party or its products and services. You agree that Samsung shall not be

responsible or liable, directly or indirectly, for any damage or loss, including but not limited to any damage to the mobile device or loss of data, caused or alleged to be caused by, or in connection with, use of or reliance on any such third party content, products, or services available on or through any such application. You acknowledge and agree that the use of any third-party application is governed by such third party application provider's Terms of Use, License Agreement, Privacy Policy, or other such agreement and that any information or personal data you provide, whether knowingly or unknowingly, to such third-party application provider, will be subject to such third party application provider's privacy policy, if such a policy exists. SAMSUNG DISCLAIMS ANY RESPONSIBILITY FOR ANY DISCLOSURE OF INFORMATION OR ANY OTHER PRACTICES OF ANY THIRD PARTY APPLICATION PROVIDER. SAMSUNG EXPRESSLY DISCLAIMS ANY WARRANTY REGARDING WHETHER YOUR PERSONAL INFORMATION IS CAPTURED BY ANY THIRD PARTY APPLICATION PROVIDER OR THE USE TO WHICH SUCH PERSONAL INFORMATION MAY BE PUT BY SUCH THIRD PARTY APPLICATION PROVIDER.

12. **SAMSUNG APPLICATIONS**. Certain Samsung applications and services may be included with, or downloaded to, this mobile device. Many of them require Samsung Services membership registration (“Samsung Account”), and your rights and obligations will be set forth in separate Samsung Account terms and conditions and privacy policies. There are non-Samsung Account applications and services that require your consent to their separate terms and conditions and privacy policies. You expressly acknowledge and agree that your use of such applications and services will be subject to the applicable terms and conditions and privacy policies.

13. **LIMITATION OF LIABILITY**. SAMSUNG WILL NOT BE LIABLE FOR ANY DAMAGES OF ANY KIND ARISING OUT OF OR RELATING TO THE USE OR THE INABILITY TO USE THE SOFTWARE OR ANY THIRD PARTY APPLICATION, ITS CONTENT OR FUNCTIONALITY, INCLUDING BUT NOT LIMITED TO DAMAGES CAUSED BY OR RELATED TO ERRORS, OMISSIONS, INTERRUPTIONS, DEFECTS, DELAY IN OPERATION OR TRANSMISSION, COMPUTER VIRUS, FAILURE TO CONNECT, NETWORK CHARGES, IN-APP PURCHASES, AND ALL OTHER DIRECT, INDIRECT, SPECIAL, INCIDENTAL, EXEMPLARY, OR CONSEQUENTIAL DAMAGES EVEN IF SAMSUNG HAS BEEN ADVISED OF THE POSSIBILITY OF SUCH DAMAGES. SOME JURISDICTIONS DO NOT ALLOW THE EXCLUSION OR LIMITATION OF INCIDENTAL OR CONSEQUENTIAL DAMAGES, SO THE ABOVE EXCLUSIONS OR LIMITATIONS MAY NOT APPLY TO YOU. NOTWITHSTANDING

THE FOREGOING, SAMSUNG ELECTRONIC CO.'S TOTAL LIABILITY TO YOU FOR ALL LOSSES, DAMAGES, CAUSES OF ACTION, INCLUDING BUT NOT LIMITED TO THOSE BASED ON CONTRACT, TORT, OR OTHERWISE, ARISING OUT OF YOUR USE OF THE SOFTWARE OR THIRD PARTY APPLICATIONS ON THIS MOBILE DEVICE, OR ANY OTHER PROVISION OF THIS EULA, SHALL NOT EXCEED THE AMOUNT PURCHASER PAID SPECIFICALLY FOR THIS MOBILE DEVICE OR ANY SUCH THIRD PARTY APPLICATION THAT WAS INCLUDED WITH THIS MOBILE DEVICE. THE FOREGOING LIMITATIONS, EXCLUSIONS, AND DISCLAIMERS (INCLUDING SECTIONS 10, 11, 12 AND 13) SHALL APPLY TO THE MAXIMUM EXTENT PERMITTED BY APPLICABLE LAW, EVEN IF ANY REMEDY FAILS ITS ESSENTIAL PURPOSE.

14. **U.S. GOVERNMENT END USERS RESTRICTED RIGHTS**. The Software is licensed only with "restricted rights" and as "commercial items" consisting of "commercial software" and "commercial software documentation" with only those rights as are granted to all other end users pursuant to the terms and conditions herein. All Products are provided only with "restricted rights" with only those rights as are granted to all other end users pursuant to the terms and conditions herein. All Software and Products are provided subject to Federal Acquisition Regulation (FAR) 52.227.19.

15. **APPLICABLE LAW**. This EULA is governed by the laws of the jurisdiction where you are a resident or, if a resident of the United States, by the laws of the state of Texas, without regard to its conflict of law provisions. This EULA shall not be governed by the UN Convention on Contracts for the International Sale of Goods, the application of which is expressly excluded.

16. **DISPUTE RESOLUTION**.

(a) Non-United States residents. If a dispute, controversy or difference arising in any way from this EULA or your use of the Software is not amicably settled, it shall be subject to the non-exclusive jurisdiction of the courts of the jurisdiction where you are a resident. Notwithstanding the foregoing, Samsung may apply for injunctive remedies (or an equivalent type of urgent legal relief) in any jurisdiction.

(b) United States residents. ALL DISPUTES WITH SAMSUNG ARISING IN ANY WAY FROM THIS EULA OR YOUR USE OF THE SOFTWARE SHALL BE RESOLVED EXCLUSIVELY THROUGH FINAL AND BINDING ARBITRATION, AND NOT BY A COURT OR JURY. Any such dispute shall not be combined or consolidated with any other person's or entity's claim or dispute, and specifically, without limitation of the foregoing, shall not under any circumstances proceed as part of a class

action. The arbitration shall be conducted before a single arbitrator, whose award may not exceed, in form or amount, the relief allowed by the applicable law. The arbitration shall be conducted according to the American Arbitration Association (AAA) Commercial Arbitration Rules applicable to consumer disputes. This arbitration provision is entered pursuant to the Federal Arbitration Act. The laws of the State of Texas, without reference to its choice of laws principles, shall govern the interpretation of the EULA and all disputes that are subject to this arbitration provision. The arbitrator shall decide all issues of interpretation and application of this arbitration provision and the EULA. For any arbitration in which your total damage claims, exclusive of attorney fees and expert witness fees, are $5,000.00 or less ("Small Claim"), the arbitrator may, if you prevail, award your reasonable attorney fees, expert witness fees and costs as part of any award, but may not grant Samsung its attorney fees, expert witness fees or costs unless it is determined that the claim was brought in bad faith. In a Small Claim case, you shall be required to pay no more than half of the total administrative, facility and arbitrator fees, or $50.00 of such fees, whichever is less, and Samsung shall pay the remainder of such fees. Administrative, facility and arbitrator fees for arbitrations in which your total damage claims, exclusive of attorney fees and expert witness fees, exceed $5,000.00 ("Large Claim") shall be determined according to AAA rules. In a Large Claim case, the arbitrator may grant to the prevailing party, or apportion among the parties, reasonable attorney fees, expert witness fees and costs. Judgment may be entered on the arbitrator's award in any court of competent jurisdiction. This arbitration provision also applies to claims against Samsung's employees, representatives and affiliates if any such claim arises from the licensing or use of the Software. You may opt out of this dispute resolution procedure by providing notice to Samsung no later than 30 calendar days from the date of the first consumer purchaser's purchase of this device. To opt out, you must send notice by e-mail to optout@sta.samsung.com, with the subject line: "Arbitration Opt Out." You must include in the opt out e-mail (a) your name and address; (b) the date on which the device was purchased; (c) the device model name or model number; and (d) the IMEI or MEID or Serial Number, as applicable, if you have it (the IMEI or MEID or Serial Number can be found (i) on the device box; (ii) on the device information screen, which can be found under "Settings;" (iii) on a label on the back of the device beneath the battery, if the battery is removable; and (iv) on the outside of the device if the battery is not

removable). Alternatively, you may opt out by calling 1-888-987-4357 no later than 30 calendar days from the date of the first consumer purchaser's purchase of the device and providing the same information. These are the only two forms of notice that will be effective to opt out of this dispute resolution procedure. Opting out of this dispute resolution procedure will not affect your use of the device or its preloaded Software, and you will continue to enjoy the benefits of this license.

17. **ENTIRE AGREEMENT; SEVERABILITY**. This EULA is the entire agreement between you and Samsung relating to the Software and supersedes all prior or contemporaneous oral or written communications, proposals and representations with respect to the Software or any other subject matter covered by this EULA. If any provision of this EULA is held to be void, invalid, unenforceable or illegal, the other provisions shall continue in full force and effect. [050113]

Index

Numerics

2G Network
Using Only 183
2-Sec Pause
Adding 52
2-sec Pause
Adding 49
4G Mobile Hotspot
Activating 171

A

Abc mode 44
About Device 229
Accounts 219
Synchronize 220
Add accounts 219
Adding a New Contact
Idle Screen 68
Address Book 66
Adding a New Contact 67
Adding Pauses to Contact Numbers 69
Copying a contact to the Phone 80
Copying Contacts to Phone 79
Copying Contacts to SIM Card 78
Deleting Address Book Entries 80
Deleting Contacts from SIM card 80
Dialing a Number 70
Favorites 78
Finding an Address Book Entry 70
Group Settings 76
Managing Address Book Contacts 78
Service Dialing Numbers 80
Using Contacts List 70
Address Book Options 74
Air Gesture
Quick Glance 27
Air view 218
Airplane mode 180, 195
Alarm 113
Alerts
Presidential 90
AllShare Play
see Samsung Link 146, 148
AllShareCast Hub 146
AMBER Alerts 90
Disable 91
Android Beam 188
Application Folders
Creating 37
Applications
Google Mail 120
Hide 107
Messages 130
Sharing with Others 36
Show Hidden 107
Shutting Down 108
Using the Camcorder 102
Using the Camera 96
World Clock 115
Applications settings
managing 226
running services 227

Apps
Adding 29
Apps Screen
Customizing 107
AppStore 109

B

Backing up your data 221
Battery
charging 10
Display Percentage 12
Extending Life 12
Installing 9
Low Battery Indicator 12
Show Battery Percentage 12
Battery Life
Extending 12
Battery Use & Safety 241
Bigger Font
Setting 208
Blocking Mode 206
On 206
Bluetooth
Changing Name 179
Device Name 14
Outgoing Headset Condition 200
Sending contacts 169
Bluetooth Name
Changing 167
Books
Play Books 136
Brightness
Adjustment 40
Browser 126
Entering a URL 126
Bubble
Options 87

C

Calculator 109
Calendar 110
Calibrate Screen 28
Calibration
Gyroscope 217
Call
Settings 53
Call Barring 201
Call Forwarding 200
Settings 201
Call Functions 49
3-Way Calling (Multi-Party Calling) 63
Address Book 55
Adjusting the Call Volume 59
Answering a Call 55
Call Back Missed Call 56
Call Duration 58
Call Forwarding 201
Call Log 55
Correcting the Number 50
Dialing a Recent Number 50
Ending a Call 50
International Call 49
Making a Call 49
Manual Pause Dialing 49
Options During a Call 59
Putting a Call on Hold 61
Saving a recent call number to Address Book 56
Searching for a Number in Address Book 64
Using the Speakerphone 63

Call rejection 198
Call Sound
Adding More Volume 59
Personalize 61
Call Waiting 62, 201
Settings 201
Caller ID 200
Calling
Using Wi-Fi 185
Camcorder 102
Settings 99
Shooting Video 102
Camcorder Options
Camcorder Options after a Video is Taken 103
Camera
Modes 97
Quick Settings 98
Settings 99
Taking Pictures 96
Care and Maintenance 246
Changing Your Settings 175
Charging battery 10
ChatON 111
Adding a Buddy 112
Adding New Buddy 112
Chatting On 112
Deleting Bubble 112
Register Service 111
Children and Cell Phones 236
Clock 113
Cloud 220
CMAS 90
Commercial Mobile Alerting System (CMAS) 239
Contact
Copying to microSD Card 80
Contacts 66
Merge with Samsung Account 74
Create Folder
Group Apps 107
Creating a Playlist 133

D

Deregister
Web Storage 149
Device
Calibration 28
Dialing Options 52
Display
icons 21
Using Negative Colors 209
Display / Touch-Screen 244
Do cell phones pose a health hazard? 232
Downloads 117
Draft Messages 83
Driving Mode 206
Dropbox 149
Uploading Picture 119

E

Easy Mode
Home Screen 198
EDGE Network 183

Editing a Picture 100
Email 94
Creating a Corporate Email Account 94
Creating Additional Email Accounts 95
Switching Between Email Accounts 95
Emergency
Alert Preview 90
Alerts 90
Emergency Alert
Configuration 90
Emergency Alerts 90
AMBER 90
Imminent Extreme 90
Message Settings 90
Severe 90
Emergency Calls 245
Making 51
With SIM 51
Without SIM 51
Emoticons 83
Entering Text
Changing the Text Entry Mode 44
Using 123Sym Mode 45
Using Abc Mode 44
Using Swype 46, 47
Using Symbol/Numeric Mode 45
Exposure to Radio Frequency (RF) Signals 232
Extra Volume 59
Extreme Alert
Disable 91

F

FCC Hearing Aid Compatibility (HAC) Regulations for Wireless Devices 251
FCC Notice and Cautions 253
Fixed Dialing Numbers 201
Flipboard 119
Folder
Create 29
Font Size
Caption 160
Changing 208
Forgot Pattern? 193

G

Gallery 103, 120
viewing pictures 104
viewing videos 104
Gestures 216
Overview 26
Getting Started 6
Setting Up Your Phone 7
Voicemail 15
Gmail 120
Google
Settings 122
Signing into Your Account 120
Google Chrome 113
Google Maps 129
Google Now
Adjust Settings 122
Google Play Music 137
Google Settings 122
Google Talk
see Hangouts 125

Google Voice Typing 43
Google voice typing settings 211
Google+
Settings 122
GPS 245
Group
Adding a contact 76
Editing 77
Joining 124
Removing a contact 76
Group Play
Creating a Group 124
Joining a Group 124
Sharing Pictures 124
Group Settings
Editing a Caller Group 77
Gyroscope
Calibration 27, 28

H

HAC 205
Handwriting 46
Handwriting feature 46
Hangouts 125
HDR 98
Health and Safety Information 232
Hearing Aids 205
Help
In-Device 125
Hidden Applications
Show 107
Home Screen
Assigning a New 39
Menu Settings 29
Home screen mode 197
Hotspots 180, 181

I

Icons
Application 106
Indicator 21
Icons, description 21
In call
Options 60
In-Call Options 59
Incognito 127
Create Window 127
Exit Window 127
International Call 49
Internet 126
Search 126
IR
Smart Remote 17

K

Keyboard Input Methods 210
Keyboard settings 211
Keypad
Changing Text Input 44

L

Landscape 44
Language and input 210
Language and keyboard settings
select locale 210

Linking Contacts 71
Local 128
Location services 222
Location services settings 191
Lock Pattern
If I Forgot My Pattern 193
Lock Screen
Say Wake-Up Command 192
Shortcuts 191
LTE 171
Network Mode 182
Selecting 182
LTE Network 182

M

Maps 129
Memory Card 41
Merge with Google 74
Message
Register a Number as Spam 86
Reply 112
Thread Options 86
Message Options 83
Message Search 88
Messaging
Adding a Signature 90
Block Unknown Senders 90, 92
Creating and Sending Text Messages 82
Deleting a message 87
Draft 83
Handwriting 46
Insert Smiley 83
Locked 83
Options 83
Scheduled Messages 83
Settings 88
Signature 90
Signing into Email 94
Spam 83
Text Templates 93
Translate Text 84
Types of Messages 81
MetroZONE 131
microSD card 41
microSDHC card 41
Microsoft Exchange 67, 94
Mobile Hotspot 131
Allowed Devices 173
Changing Password 172
Connecting 172
MAC FIltering 173
Mobile Web
Entering Text in the Mobile Web Browser 126
Using Bookmarks 128
Mono
Audio Setup 209
Motion 216
Activate 27
Overview 26
Motions 216
Movies 137
Multi Window
Activate/Deactivate 30
Customizing 31
Increase App Window Size 33

Maximize App 33
Panel Relocation 31
Rearrange Apps 31
Removing Apps 31
Restoring Apps 31
Running Multiple Apps 32
Switch Arrangement 33
Tab Repositioning 30
Using 30
Music 132
Music App
Searching for Music 138
Tab Options 138
Music Player 132
adding music 133
creating a playlist 133
removing music 133
Mute 60, 64
My Files 134
My Places 129
myMetro 135

N

Navigation 135
context-sensitive menus 26
terms used 26
touch gestures 26
Nearby devices 189
Negative Colors 209
Network Mode
2G Network 182, 183
LTE 182
WCDMA/GSM 182
NFC
On 104
Noise Reduction 61

O

One-Handed Operation
On/Off 53, 60
Operating Environment 249
Other Important Safety Information 253
Outlook 94

P

Palm Motion
Activate 27
On 27
Panorama 98
PC Connections 170
Personal Localized Alerting Network (PLAN) 239
Phone
Front View 18
icons 21
Rear View 21
Side View 20
Switching On/Off 13
Photo
Editing 100
Picture
Color Correction 101
Face Corrections 101
Frame 101
Pictures 103, 120
Gallery 103, 120
Sharing 104
Places 136
Play Books 136

Play Movies & TV 137
Play Music 137
Play Store 138
Quick Access 107
Pointer speed 215
Power Saving Mode 207
Powering
Off 13
On 13
PredictiveText 211
Privacy settings
factory data reset 222

Q

QWERTY keypad 44

R

Red Eye
Correction 101
Reducing Exposure
Hands-Free Kits and Other Accessories 235
Reject List
Add to 57
Add to Reject List 58
Reject list 58
remote control WatchON 155
Reset
factory data 222
Responsible Listening 247
Restricting Children's Access to Your Mobile device 253
Rhapsody 139

S

S Beam 189
On 105
Sharing Multiple Pictures 105
Sharing Pictures 104
S Memo 139
Creating a New Memo 139
S Translator 141
S Voice 141
Set Wake-Up Command 192
Samsung Account
Merge Contacts 74
Samsung Hub
Creating a New Account 143
Using 144
Samsung Keyboard 44
Samsung Link 146
Definitions 146
Deregister Storage 149
Sharing Media 150
Web Storage Setup 149
Samsung Link Settings 148
Samsung Mobile Products and Recycling 243
scientific calculator 109
Screen Lock Pattern
Forgot My Pattern 193
Screen Mirroring
On 190
SD Card 41
SD card
Formatting 42
Mounting 41
Space 41
Unmounting 41
Security 221, 223
Security settings
device administration 224
trusted credentials 225

Service Dialing Numbers 80
Settings 99, 175
Call 53
Severe Alert
Disable 91
Share Applications 36
Shortcuts
Adding from Apps 34
Changing Primary 35
Creating 34
Show Battery Percentage 12
SIM
Micro 6
SIM card
installation 9
Installing 8
SkyDrive 149
Smart Practices While Driving 240
Smart screen 217
Smart Switch 17
Snooze 114
Software Update 230
Wi-Fi 231
Spam 93
Accessing Your Spam Folder 93
Add a Phrase 90, 92
Add Number 84, 86
Assigning Manually 91
Assigning Phone Numbers 91
Block Unknown Numbers 92
Block Unknown Senders 90, 92
Manually Add a Number 90, 91
Match Criteria 92
Registering a Phrase as Spam 92
Settings 90, 91
Spam Messages
Assigning 83
Speakerphone Key 63
Specific Absorption Rate (SAR) Certification Information 237
Speed Dial
Changing an entry 54
Removing an entry 54
Standard Limited Warranty 256
Standard Mode
Home Screen 197
Stopwatch 115
SugarSync 149
Swap 62
SWYPE
entering text using 46, 47
Swype
Cellular Data 214
Swype Keypad Settings 213
Swype Settings 47
Symbol/Numeric mode 45
Synchronization settings
auto-sync 191
Synchronizing Accounts 220

T

Tethering
Active Icon 174
Disconnecting 174
Mobile Hotspot 171
see USB Tethering 173
Tethering and Mobile Hotspot 184
Text Input
Abc mode 44
Methods 42
numeric mode 45

symbol mode 45
Text Input Method
Selecting 43
Text Templates 93
Create Your Own 93
Timer 116
Automatic Answering 200
Touch Screen 13
Lock/Unlock 13
Transferring Large Files 104
Translate 84
TranslateMessage Bubble 87
Translator 141
Travel Charger 10
Using 11
TTY Mode 205

U

UL Certified Travel Charger 244
Understanding Your Phone 17
Features of Your Phone 17
Front View 18
Rear View 21
Side Views 20
Unknown Numbers
Blocking Messages 92
Unmute 60
USB settings
mass storage device 170
USB Tethering
Activating 174
Use GPS Satellites 129
Use Wireless Networks 129

V

Video 151
Sharing Videos 152
Video player 151
Voice control 218
Voice Recorder 153
Voicemail
Accessing 16
From Another Phone 16
Setup 15
Volume 195
VPN Client 155

W

Wait
Adding 50
Wallpaper
Assign Home 29
Warranty Information 256
WatchON 155
Adding a New Room 159
Changing Channels 157
Configure Just For You 158
Customizing Your Remote 156
Initial Configuration 155
Locating Programs 157
Personalize 158
Settings 158
Using 157
Web 126
Widget
Adding Widgets 29
Widgets
Adding/Removing 35
Wi-Fi 162
Calling 185
using Kies via Wi-Fi 190

Wi-Fi Calling
Activating 185, 186
Connection Preferences 187
Icons 188
Launching 187
Settings 186
Wi-Fi Direct 165, 176
Device Name 14
Wi-Fi Settings 176
World Clock
Deleting an Entry 115
World clock 115
WPA2 PSK 171, 172
WPS PIN
Pairing 178
WPS Push Button
Connect 177
Pairing 177

Y

YouTube 159
High Quality 161
Settings 160